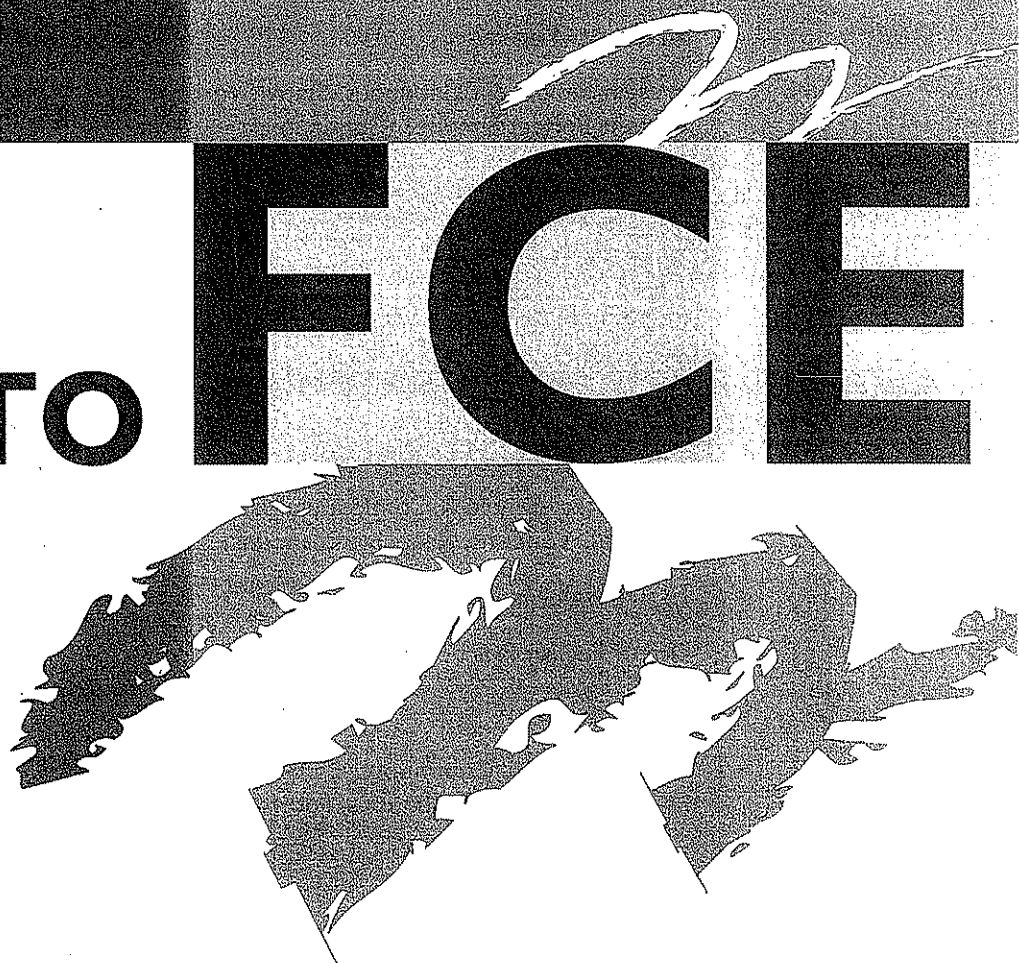



US IT TO FCE AC A



Joseph Parsalis
Nicholas Stephens

 **NEW EDITIONS**
English Language Teaching

CONTENTS

Unit 1	Present Tenses Present Simple & Continuous, Stative Verbs, Present Perfect Simple & Continuous	page 4
Unit 2	Vocabulary Practice	page 10
Unit 3	Past Tenses (1) Past Simple & Continuous	page 16
Unit 4	Vocabulary Practice	page 28
Unit 5	Past Tenses (2) & Pronouns Past Perfect Simple & Continuous, Used To/Would, Personal Pronouns, Reflexive Pronouns, Possession	page 34
Unit 6	Examination Practice Use of English Practice Tests 1 & 2	page 40
Unit 7	The Future Future Simple & Continuous, Be Going To, Present Simple & Continuous, Future Perfect Simple & Continuous	page 46
Unit 8	Vocabulary Practice	page 52
Unit 9	Nouns, Quantifiers & Articles Plural Nouns, Countable & Uncountable Nouns, Quantifiers, Definite & Indefinite Articles	page 56
Unit 10	Vocabulary Practice	page 62
Unit 11	Modals Can, Could & Be Able To, Must & Have To, May/Might, Should, Needn't	page 66
Unit 12	Examination Practice Use of English Practice Tests 3 & 4	page 78
Unit 13	Adjectives & Adverbs Comparatives & Superlatives, Adverbs of Frequency, Prepositions of Time & Place	page 84
Unit 14	Vocabulary Practice	page 92
Unit 15	The Passive Passive Voice, Personal & Impersonal Construction, Make/Let/Be Allowed To	page 96

CONTENTS

Unit 16	Vocabulary Practice	page 106
Unit 17	The Causative Form	page 110
Unit 18	Examination Practice	page 112
	Use of English Practice Tests 5 & 6	
Unit 19	Infinitive & Gerund	page 118
	Full Infinitive, Bare Infinitive, Gerund, Too/Enough	
Unit 20	Vocabulary Practice	page 130
Unit 21	Indirect Speech	page 134
	Indirect Statements, Indirect Questions, Indirect Commands & Requests, Reporting Verbs	
Unit 22	Vocabulary Practice	page 144
Unit 23	Question Tags & So/Neither	page 148
Unit 24	Examination Practice	page 150
	Use of English Practice Tests 7 & 8	
Unit 25	Conditionals & Wishes	page 156
	Zero Conditional, First Conditional, Second Conditional, Third Conditional, Wishes, Suppose/What if ...?	
Unit 26	Vocabulary Practice	page 166
Unit 27	Clauses (1)	page 170
	Relative Clauses, Time Clauses, Result Clauses, Too/Enough	
Unit 28	Vocabulary Practice	page 178
Unit 29	Clauses (2)	page 182
	Purpose Clauses, In Case, Reason Clauses, Clauses of Contrast & Concession, Participle Clauses, Not Only ... But Also	
Unit 30	Examination Practice	page 186
	Use of English Practice Tests 9 & 10	
	Irregular Verbs	page 192

PRESENT TENSES

Present Simple & Continuous, Stative Verbs, Present Perfect Simple & Continuous

Present Simple

Form		
I/you/we/they work he/she/it works	I/you/we/they don't work he/she/it doesn't work	Do I/you/we/they work? Does he/she/it work?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Habitual actions Laws of science and nature Permanent situations Timetables and programmed events 	<p>George always brushes his teeth in the morning.</p> <p>Water boils at 100°C.</p> <p>He lives near the airport. / She doesn't work here.</p> <p>The train leaves at 19.25.</p>	

Present Continuous

Form		
I am working you/we/they are working he/she/it is working	I'm not working you/we/they aren't working he/she/it isn't working	Am I working? Are you/we/they working? Is he/she/it working?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To describe a temporary action taking place now or around the time of speaking For arrangements that will take place in the near future For a repeated action indicating annoyance (used with <i>always</i>, <i>constantly</i>, etc) 	<p>Jane is preparing a meal now.</p> <p>Tony is working in the library this summer.</p> <p>Peter is having a party on Saturday.</p> <p>My sister is always borrowing my clothes without asking.</p>	

Stative Verbs

Stative verbs are normally used in the Present Simple tense and not the Present Continuous.

	Verbs	Examples
Senses	hear, feel, see, smell, taste	I feel tired.
Feelings, emotions	admire, appreciate, desire, like, dislike, detest, fear, hate, love, mind, need, respect, want, wish	I really respect you. She doesn't want to come.
Mental activity	agree, believe, expect, forget, imagine, know, mean, realise, recognise, remember, understand	I don't agree with you. You don't mean that.
Possession	own, belong, owe, possess, have	This hotel belongs to my father.
Other	notice, appear, matter, seem, sound, cost	It doesn't matter whether you come or not.

Some stative verbs can be used in continuous forms, but there is a change in meaning. Instead of describing a state, they describe an activity.

Verb	State	Activity
have	<i>I have two brothers.</i>	<i>She is having a holiday in France. (experiencing)</i>
feel	<i>I feel tired.</i>	<i>The doctor is feeling her arm. (touching)</i>
expect	<i>I expect you're sorry now.</i>	<i>I am expecting an answer. (waiting for)</i>
taste	<i>This soup tastes fantastic.</i>	<i>She is tasting the food. (tasting the flavour)</i>
see	<i>I see that you have got a new car.</i>	<i>I am seeing the doctor today. (meeting by appointment)</i>
smell	<i>This bread smells delicious.</i>	<i>Why are you smelling the food? (sniffing at)</i>
think (of)	<i>I think you're very clever.</i>	<i>I am thinking of buying a new car. (forming a possible plan in one's mind)</i>

Note: Have can also be used in continuous forms when combined with a party, a baby, a drink, a bath, a meal, etc.

She is having a baby in the summer.

He can't come to the phone; he is having a bath.

I am having lunch with my mother tomorrow.



Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

- Mrs Owen..... *receives*..... (receive) a letter from her son every month. He (study) abroad and (never forget) to write to his mother.
- When I (go) to the dentist, I (feel) tense.
- Kate (not remember) new words after studying them. She (not seem) to be able to learn them.
- She (watch) TV at the moment. She (watch) TV every night before she (go) to bed.
- 'Hello, Sue! What (you do) over there?'
- 'I (try) to fix this radio. I (listen) to the radio every day after work.'
- Jane can't come to the phone because she (wash) her hair.
- She (wash) her hair every day.
- (you / always / lock) your windows before you leave?
- Look! It (snow). It (seldom snow) at this time of year.
- Jane (see) a doctor about her headaches tomorrow morning.
- Emma (have) a wonderful house.
- I (think) Mr Brown is a very good teacher.
- I (think) of buying a new house.
- I can't afford to buy this house. It (cost) too much.
- Look! It (rain). Unfortunately, I (not have) my umbrella with me.
- During the week, I (sleep) until 8 am. Then, I (get up), (brush) my teeth, (have) breakfast and (go) to school. I (never miss) school.
- Sue (not want) to visit her grandmother because her friends (go) to the beach.
- What time (the plane / take off)?
- They (have) a party on Saturday.



2

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 He tastes / is tasting the soup at the moment to see if it needs more salt.
- 2 They are visiting / visit their grandparents every Sunday.
- 3 What do you think / are you thinking the best way to overcome stress is?
- 4 Larry never goes / is going out after midnight.
- 5 We think / are thinking of moving to Wales.
- 6 Jack always is wearing / wears a suit to the office.
- 7 It isn't true. I am not believing / don't believe it.
- 8 Please be quiet. I am trying / try to concentrate.
- 9 Martha stays / is staying with Jill for the time being.
- 10 Marilyn doesn't watch / isn't watching horror films.
- 11 How are you going / do you go to work every day?
- 12 I can't come with you tonight. I am seeing / see an old friend.
- 13 I think / am thinking that you should find another job.
- 14 Well done! I am admiring / admire your courage.
- 15 He is thinking / thinks of buying a house in the country.
- 16 This perfume smells / is smelling awful.

3

Find the mistake and correct the sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Does Paul walks to work every day?
<u>Does Paul walk to work every day?</u> | 5 Nobody think that John will pass the test.
..... |
| 2 My mother always telling us to eat breakfast!
..... | 6 My brother don't have a job right now.
..... |
| 3 What time do the last train leave?
..... | 7 My friend isn't liking her house.
..... |
| 4 He is see the dentist at 6 pm today.
..... | 8 She thinks of moving to a new apartment.
..... |

4

Write the questions to the answers.

- 1 A Where do you usually go at the weekend?
B I usually go to my friend's house at the weekend.
- 2 A What time?
B I leave school at four o'clock every day.
- 3 A Where?
B My sister lives in London.
- 4 A What on Saturday night?
B I am visiting my grandmother.
- 5 A with us to the party on Sunday?
B No, I am not. I think I will stay at home.
- 6 A Why that woolly hat?
B I feel rather cold today.
- 7 A a heavy coat?
B No, I don't. I only wear a heavy coat when it is cold outside.
- 8 A What right now?
B I am doing my homework.

5

Rewrite the sentences using the interrogative and the negative form.

- 1 We eat out during the week.
A *Do you eat out during the week* ?
B No, *we don't eat out during the week*
- 2 My parents are visiting their friends today.
A ?
B No,
- 3 Sheila is sitting her exams in June.
A ?
B No,
- 4 It snows in Alaska.
A ?
B No,
- 5 Paul likes spaghetti.
A ?
B No,
- 6 He comes home from work at 7 pm.
A ?
B No,

6

Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

- 1 The children *are doing* (do) their homework at the moment.
- 2 I (have) lunch with Mary tomorrow.
- 3 Light (travel) at 186,000 miles per second.
- 4 I (work) in the sales department for a few days.
- 5 They (always try) to show how clever they are. It's so annoying!
- 6 We (go) to Santorini every summer.
- 7 The children (get) lots of presents every Christmas.
- 8 Now I (remember) her name! It's Juliette.
- 9 Jack (have) a small cottage in the country.
- 10 The ice at the North Pole (get) thinner.
- 11 The last performance (start) at eleven o'clock.
- 12 She (not go) shopping on Fridays.

Present Perfect Tenses

Tense	Form
Present Perfect Simple	have/has + past participle <i>I have lived here since 1990.</i>
Present Perfect Continuous	have/has + been + -ing <i>I have been painting the house.</i>

Note: With regular verbs, the past participle is formed by adding **-ed** to the infinitive. With irregular verbs, the past participle forms must be learnt. A list of the most common irregular verbs is on page 192 at the back of this book.

Present Perfect Simple

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actions which started in the past and have not stopped Actions which occurred in the past and have an effect on the present Actions which occurred in the past but we do not know or are not interested in when Experiences Achievements The number of times something has happened Actions which have occurred during an unfinished period of time 	<p><i>I have worked in this office for three years.</i></p> <p><i>She's forgotten his phone number, so she can't ring him.</i></p> <p><i>We have seen this film before.</i></p> <p><i>They have visited India.</i></p> <p><i>He has learnt three foreign languages.</i></p> <p><i>He's failed his driving test four times.</i></p> <p><i>I've done a lot of work this morning and it's only ten o'clock.</i></p>

Note: The Present Perfect Simple is also used with *already, before, ever, just, never, up to now, yet, for, since*.
*I've **already told** him about the problem.*
*She's **just finished** her project.*
*I **have lived** here **for** two years.*
*He **has worked** there **since** 1997.*

Present Perfect Continuous

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actions which started in the past and are still going on To emphasise how long an action has been in progress Actions which may or may not have stopped and are responsible for a present condition 	<p><i>They have been studying for their exams since October.</i></p> <p><i>I have been waiting all morning!</i></p> <p><i>He's been looking after the children; that's why he's exhausted.</i></p>

Note: The Present Perfect Continuous is also used with *all day/night, for, since, lately, recently*.
*He **has been training** hard **lately**.*
*She **has been decorating** her house **since** January.*

7 Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous.

- I *haven't been* (not go) to a party since Christmas.
- It (rain) all day. It seems it will never stop!
- People (call) all morning to complain about the poor service and they are still calling.
- (you / finish) your homework yet?
- I (try) to contact Peter but his phone is always engaged.
- He (fly) an aeroplane before but he doesn't think he can do it now.
- 'What's all this mess? What (you / do)?'
- 'Where (you / be)? I (look) for you for two hours.'
- He (work) in this company for 40 years and (never cause) any trouble.
- Since the doctor warned him about his poor health, James (give up) smoking.
- Someone (use) my towel. It's wet.
- I (wait) for you for half an hour. Why didn't you call to say you would be late?
- You (not pay) your rent yet. You always forget.
- He (make) up his mind not to accept the post.

8

Correct the following sentences where necessary. Put a tick (✓) below those which do not need correcting.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 Someone has been smoking in here. I can smell cigarette smoke.
.....
.....</p> <p>2 The house has belonged to the family from 1920.
.....
.....</p> <p>3 She just left her office.
.....
.....</p> <p>4 I've been typing three letters so far this morning.
.....
.....</p> | <p>5 It's the first time she is playing golf with us.
.....
.....</p> <p>6 We've been checking the records but we haven't finished yet.
.....
.....</p> <p>7 Tom has been missing the bus so he'll be late.
.....
.....</p> <p>8 Her eyes are red because she has cried.
.....
.....</p> |
|--|--|

9

Study the example and rewrite the sentences in the same way.

He has never eaten Chinese food before.

This is the first time he has (ever) eaten Chinese food.

- | |
|---|
| <p>1 Jane has never played the guitar before.
This is the first time</p> <p>2 They have never visited a museum before.
This is the first time</p> <p>3 My brother has never had an accident before.
This is the first time</p> <p>4 I have never been to a rock concert before.
It's the first time</p> <p>5 I have never sung in front of an audience before.
It's the first time</p> <p>6 He has never listened to this kind of music before.
It's the first time</p> |
|---|

10

Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous.

- | |
|---|
| <p>1 We <i>have missed</i> (miss) the bus, so we're walking to school.</p> <p>2 They (swim) all morning. That's why they're exhausted.</p> <p>3 He (buy) the book you wanted.</p> <p>4 Anna (catch) a cold three times this year.</p> <p>5 How long (learn) English?</p> <p>6 They (go) to Italy for their holidays for ten years.</p> <p>7 Sue (look) for a new job since last year and still hasn't found one.</p> <p>8 They (forget) where they parked their car.</p> <p>9 She (try) to repair the TV for two hours. I think she should give up now.</p> <p>10 The teacher (lose) some of her books.</p> |
|---|

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: *break*

1 Use the verb **break** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

out out off ~~up~~ up up up into down down

- 1 After Joe had lost control of his model aeroplane, it hit the ground and *broke up* (smashed into pieces).
- 2 Two prisoners succeeded in (escaping) by dressing up as guards.
- 3 Jane and Simon (ended) their engagement at last night's party.
- 4 They aren't at school because they (ended their school term) for the summer holidays last week.
- 5 Harry's old car seems to (stop working) at least once a month.
- 6 The police had to (destroy) the front door in order to rescue the kidnapped child.
- 7 Peace talks failed to prevent war from (starting).
- 8 Maggie and Mark have (separated) after four years of marriage.
- 9 The burglars (forcibly entered) the house through the kitchen window.
- 10 Our meeting (ended) so late that I didn't get home until after midnight.

Phrasal verbs: *bring*

2 Use the verb **bring** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

~~out~~ out about round round back back in off on up

- 1 Our new teacher has the ability to *bring out* (explain clearly) all the main points of our physics theory.
- 2 What (caused) his sudden change in attitude towards her?
- 3 They have (produced) some excellent computer games this year.
- 4 Sam doesn't agree with our plans but Karen should be able to (convince) him
- 5 Going out in cold weather with wet hair (was the cause of) a heavy cold.
- 6 The government has (introduced) new laws concerning taxation.
- 7 Could you please (return) the book as soon as possible.
- 8 The old toys I found in the attic (caused me to recall) memories of my childhood.
- 9 We had to use smelling salts to (help) the man who had fainted (regain consciousness).
- 10 Jane said she'd get them to sign the contract and she actually (succeeded in doing) it
- 11 Roland was (raised) by his grandmother.

Phrasal verbs: come

3

Use the verb **come** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

across off ~~round~~ round up against into up out down down up with out in

- 1 If you are ever in my neighbourhood, feel free to *come round* (pay me a visit).
- 2 Whenever she eats strawberries she (develops) a rash all over her body.
- 3 It took the patient quite a while to (regain consciousness) after the operation.
- 4 Some power lines (fell to the ground) in last night's hurricane so we had no electricity.
- 5 I'll buy a new computer as soon as the price (falls).
- 6 If we (face) any more financial problems, we may have to abandon the project.
- 7 It was Janet who (found) the solution to our financial problems.
- 8 The twins (inherited) a fortune when their rich uncle died.
- 9 It's much warmer now that the sun has (appeared from behind the clouds).
- 10 As I was tidying up, I (found) some old stamps (quite by chance).
- 11 Whoever would have thought that their plan to own a multinational company would (succeed)!
- 12 I can't go shopping with you because something has (happened unexpectedly).

Words easily confused

4

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	say tell speak talk	<p>a He <i>said</i> he was going out but he didn't <i>tell</i> me where.</p> <p>b Actions louder than words.</p> <p>c You're nonsense again. Stop lies and start the truth.</p> <p>d What language were they ? I can't the difference between German and Dutch.</p> <p>e Sheila us some marvellous stories during her stay.</p>
2	travel journey voyage trip	<p>a He's away on a business at the moment.</p> <p>b Going on a long sea was dangerous at one time.</p> <p>c The will be shorter once they've completed the tunnel.</p> <p>d is said to broaden the mind.</p>
3	suggest recommend advise insist persuade	<p>a Do you think you can her to lend you her car?</p> <p>b He on staying at the most expensive hotel.</p> <p>c Her dietician her to lose weight slowly.</p> <p>d Who that you put your money in that bank?</p> <p>e Lawrence we should leave on Friday night.</p>
4	cost value price worth	<p>a The of living has risen again.</p> <p>b It's far more than I paid for it.</p> <p>c We can't afford a new washing machine at that</p> <p>d These rare stamps are of great</p>

5	fault mistake error wrong blame defect	a I have been sent two video cassettes in b It is often quite difficult to tell the difference between right and c According to her mother, she could do no d Try not to make so many e You can't put the on me this time. f I invited her by g My employing her was a(n) of judgement. h It's not my you lost your wallet. i There was a in one of the brakes.
6	client customer guest patient	a The hotel panicked when they heard the bomb go off. b There were only a few waiting to see the doctor. c He's a well-known lawyer whose include showbiz personalities. d In order to attract, the shop owner reduced his prices.
7	spend pass waste spare	a How do you your free time? b Don't time! You've got a lot of work to do. c Can you ten minutes to discuss the new security arrangements? d Time quickly during the holidays. e She a lot of time reading.
8	audience spectators viewers listeners crowd gang member	a The police had difficulty in controlling the that had turned up to greet the team at the airport. b will be able to take part in their favourite TV game show. c Radio 1 should tune in at four o'clock for live commentary of the match. d The thoroughly enjoyed the play. e Fewer than one thousand saw the game. f Every of the jury felt sorry for the defendant. g After the robbery, the escaped in a stolen car.
9	pitch track court course	a It's one of the best golf I've played on. b I'm afraid all the tennis are booked. c The spectator who ran onto the was removed from the football stadium by police. d Athletes enjoy running on where the spectators are close to the action. e The new basketball has been in use for a month now.
10	rob steal cheat burgle	a Her flat has been twice this year. b Nobody knows who the video camera. c My business partner tried to me out of my share of the profits. d Banks in Los Angeles are quite frequently. e They the elderly couple of their life savings.
11	grow grow up bring up	a Henrietta was by her aunt. b These plants fairly quickly. c We both on a small island.

Suffixes and prefixes

In the First Certificate examination you will be given a task which involves changing the base form of a word into another form. This can be done by adding suffixes or prefixes or both.

The table below shows the most common suffixes and, in the case of verbs, prefixes, used to form nouns, verbs and adjectives.

Nouns		Verbs		Adjectives	
Suffix	Example	Suffix	Example	Suffix	Example
-al	survival	-ate	compensate	-able	acceptable
-age	carriage	-ect	detect	-al	additional
-ance	acceptance	-en	shorten	-ed	pointed
-ation	exploration	-ify	terrify	-en	wooden
-dom	wisdom	-ise	modernise	-ful	faithful
-ence	dependence			-ible	responsible
-ency	urgency	Prefix	Example	-ic	atmospheric
-hood	childhood	em-	empower	-ical	technological
-ing(s)	belongings	en-	encourage	-ing	disappointing
-ion	exception			-ish	selfish
-ity	popularity			-ive	attractive
-ment	argument			-less	endless
-ness	darkness			-ly	lovely
-ship	friendship			-ory	satisfactory
-th	width			-ous	dangerous
-ty	safety			-ular	triangular
-ure	failure			-y	crazy
-y	honesty				
-ant	assistant				
-ee	employee				
-er	trainer				
-ian	politician				
-ist	physicist				
-or	sailor				



Word formation

5 Complete the following table.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
tragedy	-	tragic
.....	free	.....
.....	.....	weak
.....	marry	.....
suspicion/suspect	.....	.....
.....	.....	relieved
.....	educate	.....
.....	.....	annoyed/annoying
.....	.....	grown/growing
.....	.....	warm
.....	prefer	.....
sweetness	.....	.....
.....	describe	.....
strength	.....	.....
repetition	.....	.....
.....	doubt	.....
.....	.....	combined
apology	.....	.....
.....	.....	inventive
.....	compete	.....
.....	include	.....
.....	.....	decisive
mountain	-	.....
.....	.....	reactive
.....	.....	conclusive
.....	tend	-
.....	appreciate	.....
.....	explode	.....

6 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 Juventus are the favourites to win the <i>championship</i> next year. | CHAMPION |
| 2 Your behaviour will not go unpunished. | CHILD |
| 3 Throughout her she had difficulty in making friends. | CHILD |
| 4 They have shown no to cooperate. | WILLING |
| 5 I didn't expect him to be so | ROMANCE |
| 6 Going out without a coat wasn't very , was it? | SENSE |
| 7 What is the of the word 'impartial'. | MEAN |
| 8 The ballerina danced across the stage. | GRACE |
| 9 Take no notice of him if he to call the police. | THREAT |
| 10 There's a for you in your office. | PACK |

Preposition practice

7

Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

on

in

of

to

for

about

at

with

- 1 They accused me*of*..... dropping the plate*on*..... purpose.
- 2 If you're a hurry, don't go foot.
- 3 Nobody wanted to discuss politics because nobody was interested the subject.
- 4 I complained the manager the quality the video cassettes.
- 5 Rosa told me that she had no intention apologising what she had done.
- 6 My friends laughed me when I mistook a cow a bull.
- 7 Mike used to be keen playing volleyball but now he's fed up it.
- 8 The box was full stolen jewellery.
- 9 They had a discussion it secret.
- 10 Frank is getting engaged Mary even though they have very little common.



3 PAST TENSES (I)

Past Simple & Continuous

Past Simple

Regular verbs in the Past Simple are formed by adding *-(e)d* to the infinitive. Irregular verbs in the Past Simple Affirmative have to be learnt. See page 192 for a list of irregular verbs.

Form

Regular Verbs

I/you looked
he/she/it looked
we/you/they looked

I/you didn't look
he/she/it didn't look
we/you/they didn't look

Did I/you look?
Did he/she/it look?
Did we/you/they look?

Irregular Verbs

I/you ate
he/she/it ate
we/you/they ate

I/you didn't eat
he/she/it didn't eat
we/you/they didn't eat

Did I/you eat?
Did he/she/it eat?
Did we/you/they eat?

Use

Examples

- For actions completed in the past at a definite time
- When the action clearly took place at a definite time in the past although this time is not mentioned
- For a past habit
- For an action which interrupted another action that was in progress in the past
- For a series of completed actions in the past

*I **cancelled** the tickets yesterday.*

*I **bought** this car in London.
He **didn't say** anything about it.*

*He **went** for a walk every morning.
The telephone **rang** while we were having a meeting.
I was writing a letter when the parcel **arrived**.*

*She **sat** down, **opened** her book and **started** reading.*

Write answers to the questions, as in the example.

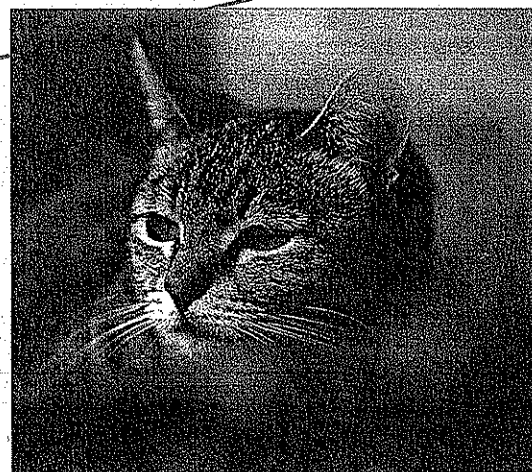
- 1 Did he say sorry to her? (him)
*No, he **didn't say** sorry to her. He **said** sorry to him.*
- 2 Did your mother know about it? (father)
- 3 Did Mr Cox forget to send the letter? (Emma)
- 4 Did she move here three years ago? (four years ago)
- 5 Did George accuse you of stealing? (lying)

2 Write the past form of the verbs.

1 steal	..... stole	6 feed	.....	11 support	.....
2 burn	.....	7 know	.....	12 play	.....
3 belong	.....	8 speak	.....	13 study	.....
4 catch	.....	9 grow	.....	14 cost	.....
5 buy	.....	10 build	.....	15 watch	.....

3 Correct the sentences.

- 1 I didn't went to school today because I was sick.
I didn't go to school today because I was sick.
- 2 When I got home, Mum didn't be there.
- 3 I arrive at the station two hours ago, and I am still here.
- 4 Mary didn't came to the party yesterday.
- 5 No, I didn't told him about it.
- 6 Did you followed my advice?
- 7 Of course I told him the truth, but he not believed me.
- 8 He had all the qualifications for the job, but he doesn't get it.
- 9 When I see him last night, I invited him to dinner.
- 10 My father didn't letted me go out last night.
- 11 The cat drunk all the milk. We had to buy some more.
- 12 I didn't felt very well last night; that's why I didn't go to the cinema.
- 13 When I see the thieves in my house last night, I was scared.
- 14 At that moment, I really don't know what to do.
- 15 I let them take what they want and then I called the police.
- 16 When the police arrived, there is nobody in the house.



Past Continuous

Form		
I was looking you were looking he/she/it was looking we/you/they were looking	I wasn't looking you weren't looking he/she/it wasn't looking we/you/they weren't looking	Was I looking? Were you looking? Was he/she/it looking? Were we/you/they looking?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For actions which were in progress at a certain time in the past For actions in progress in the past which were interrupted by another action For two or more actions that were in progress at the same time in the past 	<p><i>I was living in Belgium at that time.</i> <i>She was preparing lunch at 12 pm.</i></p> <p><i>He was doing the washing-up when Sue telephoned.</i> <i>They were driving on the motoway when they had an accident.</i></p> <p><i>While I was waiting for her at the restaurant, she was washing her hair.</i> <i>While John was visiting his grandma, I was shopping.</i></p>	

Constructions with Past Continuous

Past Continuous		Past Simple
An action in progress in the past		Another action interrupted it
<i>I was doing my homework</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>the phone rang.</i>
<i>She was cooking dinner</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>the lights went out.</i>
Past Continuous		Past Continuous
Two actions in progress at the same time		
<i>I was listening to music</i>	<i>while</i>	<i>my sister was reading a book.</i>
<i>We were watching TV</i>	<i>while</i>	<i>my parents were sleeping.</i>

4 Study the table at the bottom of page 18 and use the prompts to write sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 My father / read a newspaper / my mother / cook
 <i>My father was reading a newspaper while
 my mother was cooking.</i></p> <p>2 My sister / do her homework / I / phone her

</p> <p>3 He / talk on the phone / she / read a magazine

</p> <p>4 Pam / paint her room / her friend / arrive

</p> | <p>5 I / read my book / she / open the door

</p> <p>6 A lot of people dance / Kate and I / eat snacks

</p> <p>7 The doctor / examine him / the earthquake happen

</p> <p>8 It rain / we walk through the park

</p> |
|---|--|

5

Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in either the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

- 1 I *didn't hear* (not hear) the alarm clock this morning because I *was* (be) so tired.
- 2 When I (see) Mary last night, I (not realise) that something was wrong.
- 3 I (study) in my room when the doorbell (ring).
- 4 My mother (read) a book while my father (watch) TV.
- 5 The robber (enter) the bank, (order) everybody to lie down and (take) all the money from the safe.
- 6 We (plan) to have a barbeque party when it suddenly (start) to rain.
- 7 The children (dance) at the party when the lights (go out).
- 8 How (you break) your arm?
- 9 I (ski) last weekend when I (fall) and (break) my leg.
- 10 I (not feel) very well this morning, so I (ask) my boss for permission to leave early.
- 11 Why (you / not tell) me the truth in the first place?
- 12 He (sit) on the bank of the river when he (see) a rare bird.
- 13 It (rain) heavily when I (wake) up this morning.
- 14 Everyone in the library (read) quietly when suddenly the door (open).
- 15 I (go) to Paul's house yesterday but I (not find) him there.
- 16 While I (wonder) whether to buy the suit or not, a man (come) in and bought it.
- 17 'What (you / do) from 10 am to 2 pm yesterday?' asked the detective.
- 18 My dog (attack) the postman while he (try) to deliver a letter.
- 19 We (not sleep) all night because our next door neighbours (have) a noisy party which went on till early in the morning.
- 20 'What (you / do) when the burglars (get) in?'
'I (watch) TV and my children (study) in their room.'
- 21 (you / work) when your boss (arrive) unexpectedly?
- 22 Why (you / not report) the burglary at once?

6

Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

I (1) *was walking* (walk) along Regent Street when I (2) (realise) that a man (3) (follow) me. I (4) (turn) right and he (5) (follow). Whenever I (6) (stop), he (7) (do) too. I (8) (decide) to take the 717 bus from the bus stop just behind me. Just as the bus (9) (move) off, I (10) (jump) on. The man (11) (miss) the bus but he (12) (get) on another 717. He (13) (seem) rather angry. I (14) (get) off at Leicester Square with lots of other people. He (15) (not notice) me getting off the bus. I immediately (16) (head) for the nearest police station to report him.

7

Study the box and write two of your own sentences.

I was walking home when it started to rain.

(action in progress + action interrupting)

We were watching the film while Andrea was preparing dinner.

(two actions in progress at the same time)

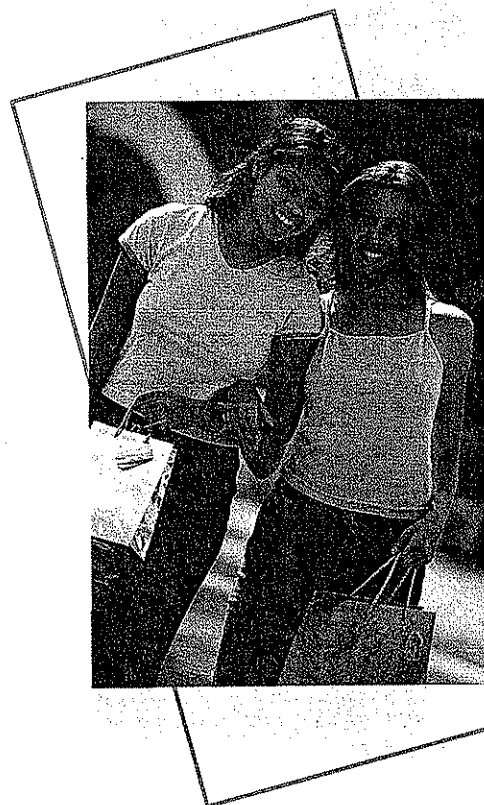
- 1
- 2

Negative Interrogative

Form	
Past Simple	Past Continuous
Didn't I/you win? Didn't he/she/it win? Didn't we/you/they win?	Wasn't I listening? Weren't you listening? Wasn't he/she/it listening? Weren't we/you/they listening?
Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To confirm something ■ To express surprise or admiration ■ To express annoyance 	Didn't you enjoy the party? Didn't they know how to get to the airport? Didn't she look beautiful? Why weren't you paying attention in class?
Note: The negative interrogative can also be used in other tenses. <i>Don't you like your haircut?</i> <i>Can't he come to our party?</i>	

8 Use the words in brackets to write negative questions.

- 1 I talked to Mum about it. (Dad)
Didn't you talk to Dad about it?
- 2 I helped Jill with her homework. (John)
- 3 She gave her daughter ten pounds. (son)
- 4 I bought Penny a nice present. (Mary)
- 5 I warned Henry. (James)
- 6 I invited Carol to my party. (Alice)
- 7 I sent a letter to my aunt. (your uncle)
- 8 I saw Jim yesterday. (Mary with him)
- 9 I spoke Italian when I was younger. (German)
- 10 Dad bought a sandwich for you. (for Jane)
- 11 I visited lots of museums in Vienna. (any galleries)
- 12 I played the piano when I was much younger. (violin)



9 Find the mistake and correct the sentence.

- 1 When I saw my friend yesterday, he was cry.
When I saw my friend yesterday, he was crying.
- 2 I try to cut down on smoking last year but it was impossible.
- 3 My parents never letted me go out at night when I was younger.
- 4 Two burglars broken into my house yesterday.
- 5 They were have a good time at the party when the police came.
- 6 I spoked to Sarah about it and she seemed quite interested.
- 7 The teacher was writing on the board while Jim fainted.
- 8 When did you saw him in the supermarket?

10 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

three years / go to the cinema
It's three years since I last went to the cinema.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 two days / see Tom | 5 seven months / catch a cold |
| 2 a long time / eat in a Chinese restaurant | 6 three years / leave the country |
| 3 two years / buy something expensive | 7 four hours / have something to eat |
| 4 five months / go on holiday | 8 a year / ride a horse |

11 Study the example and rewrite the sentences from the previous exercise.

It's three years since I last went to the cinema.
I last went to the cinema three years ago.

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 | 5 |
| 2 | 6 |
| 3 | 7 |
| 4 | 8 |

12 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

1 eat spaghetti / a month
The last time I ate spaghetti was a month ago.

2 go abroad / three years

3 visit my grandparents / two months

4 take an exam / a year

5 redecorate my room / five years

6 eat in an Italian restaurant / a month

13 Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 She didn't did the ironing yesterday because she was tired.
She didn't do the ironing yesterday because she was tired.

2 He wasn't at work yesterday when I call him.

3 The teacher caught a student cheating in the exam.

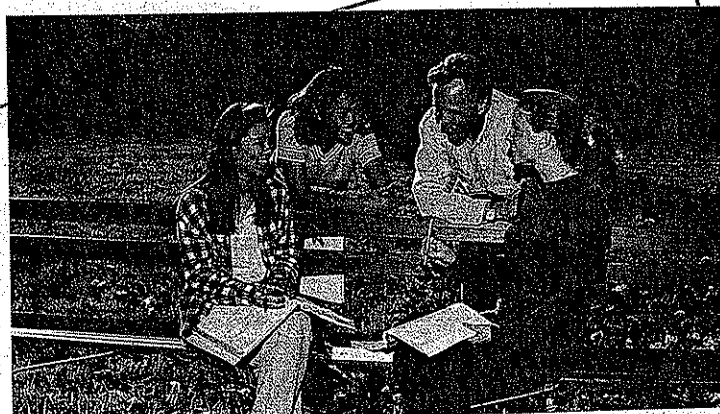
4 My father not letted me go out with my friends last Sunday.

5 Sarah were writing her composition when I saw her yesterday.

6 Our neighbour was always complained about the loud music.

7 Why did you brought me flowers? You are very kind.

8 Jane walking home when I met her.



Present Perfect Simple and Past Simple

For a full explanation of the Present Perfect Simple, see Unit 1 (page 8).
Here is a reminder of how it is formed.

Form	
Present Perfect Simple have/has + past participle <i>I have just finished my project.</i>	Past Simple infinitive + -ed <i>I finished my project yesterday.</i>
Use	
Present Perfect Simple <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For actions which started in the past and haven't stopped <i>I have worked here for two years.</i> For actions which occurred in the past and have an effect on the present <i>He has worked in a laboratory, so he knows what it's like.</i> Often used with <i>already, before, ever, just, lately, never, recently, since, up to now, yet</i> <i>I have never worked here before.</i> <i>He hasn't been to France since 1998.</i> 	Past Simple <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For actions which began and ended in the past <i>I worked there until last year.</i> For actions completed at a definite time in the past <i>I saw John yesterday.</i>
Note: The Present Perfect Simple has a connection with the present. The Past Simple always relates to the past.	

14 Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Present Perfect Simple.

- I *have known* (know) Jane for a long time and we are good friends.
- 'Sorry, Mum. I (already eat). I am not hungry'.
- Since I (leave) school, I (not see) Jenny.
- I (never eat) this kind of food before.
- James (not start) working yet. He is still studying at university.
- Anna (not go) to a concert since she (be) twenty.
- 'I hear that Barry (buy) a Ferrari.'
- 'Yes, he (buy) it last week.'
- '..... (you / ever fly) a plane?'
- 'Yes, I (fly) a plane when I was in the airforce.'
- Jonathan (oversleep) this morning and (miss) his maths examination. He (not do) that before.
- Last week, Jim (finish) painting one of the best paintings he (ever paint).
- 'No more thanks. I (already eat) too much.'
- I (buy) a new car last year, but I (not sell) my old one yet.
- Bill usually gets up at 6 am. Yesterday, he (get) up at 11 am.
- It's three years since I last (visit) Susan.
- I (not see) Carol for a long time.
- Anna (go) to live in the country six months ago and (not be) back since then.

15

Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

*It's three years since I last saw Susan.**I haven't seen Susan for three years.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 It's three weeks since I last saw a film on TV.
I | 7 It's three months since Carol last earned any money.
Carol |
| 2 It's five hours since I had something to eat.
I | 8 It's three weeks since my parents last went out.
My parents |
| 3 It's two years since he bought a car.
He | 9 We five years since we last went on holiday.
It's |
| 4 It's two weeks since she last ate meat.
She | 10 It's three days since we last watched TV.
We |
| 5 It's years since James last spoke English.
James | 11 It's ten years since they moved house.
They |
| 6 It's six months since Mary last visited a doctor.
Mary | 12 It's a month since I last wrote to my parents.
I |

16

Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

*The last time I spoke to George was three weeks ago.**I haven't spoken to George for three weeks.*

- 1 The last time I saw James was two days ago.
I
- 2 The last time Sheila ate a pizza was three years ago.
Sheila
- 3 The last time my sister sang in a choir was six years ago.
My sister
- 4 The last time I bought something expensive was five weeks ago.
I
- 5 The last time she had a party was six months ago.
She
- 6 The last time he earned any money was three months ago.
He
- 7 The last time I left my keys in the car was two years ago.
I
- 8 The last time I fed the cat was six hours ago.
I
- 9 The last time I flew a plane was three years ago.
I
- 10 The last time I had the flu was a year ago.
I

17 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

I haven't played tennis since I was at university.

I last played tennis when I was at university.

- 1 We haven't travelled abroad since we went to the Caribbean.
We last
- 2 She hasn't seen her cousin since she went to visit her.
She last
- 3 They haven't swum in the Mediterranean since they were on holiday in Greece.
They last
- 4 The Prime Minister hasn't given a speech since he was elected.
The Prime Minister last
- 5 My son hasn't sent me a postcard since he was in Egypt.
My son last
- 6 Emily hasn't taken the bus to work since her car broke down last year.
Emily last
- 7 Peter hasn't run in a marathon since he was twenty-eight years old.
Peter last
- 8 I haven't driven my car since I took Dad to the airport.
I last

18 Study the examples and rewrite the questions.

How long is it since you last met James?

When did you last meet James?

How long ago did you last meet James?

- 1 When did you last see your grandma?
How long is it
- 2 How long is it since you last visited your uncle?
When
- 3 How long is it since your mother last cooked Italian food?
When
- 4 When did your father last give you pocket money?
How long ago
- 5 When did you last take an exam?
How long ago
- 6 How long is it since you last heard from her?
When
- 7 When did you last earn any money?
How long is it
- 8 How long is it since your father last played golf?
How long ago
- 9 When did you last get a good mark?
How long is it
- 10 How long is it since Jane had a haircut?
When

19

Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

*He / smoke cigarette / the doctor tell him to stop**He hasn't smoked a cigarette since the doctor told him to stop.*

- 1 Mum / cook meal for us / she break her arm
- 2 I / speak to Paul / last year
- 3 She / travel by plane / she be a child
- 4 Susan / see her friends / she leave town
- 5 My father / smoke cigarette / he give up ten years ago
- 6 The prisoner / see his family / he go to jail ten years ago
- 7 Paul / send flowers to his wife / they get married
- 8 My parents / go on holiday / they buy their house

20

Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

*He / have an accident last year / not drive his car since then**He had an accident last year and he hasn't driven his car since then.*

- 1 She / break her arm last month / not cook since then
- 2 He / have an argument with his boss last year / be out of work since then
- 3 They / cancel his interview two months ago / not call him since then
- 4 He / move abroad two years ago / not see his friends since then
- 5 He / have operation last month / be in pain since then

21

Use either *since* or *for* to answer the questions as in the example.

- 1 Can you drive a lorry? (two years)
Yes, but I haven't driven a lorry for two years.
- 2 Can you type? (six years)
- 3 Can you play the piano? (I was a child)
- 4 Can you ride a bicycle? (1998)
- 5 Can you dance? (April)
- 6 Can you fly a plane? (many years)

22 Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 Martín hasn't seen / didn't see his daughter since Christmas.
- 2 I have looked / looked for my cat for days but I never found her.
- 3 It's three years since I have last gone / I last went to a rock concert.
- 4 My mother didn't find / hasn't found her purse yet.
- 5 Mrs Black has taught / taught French last year.
- 6 She hasn't acted in a film for / since two years.
- 7 She hasn't finished writing her novel recently / yet.
- 8 Einstein developed / has developed the theory of relativity many years ago.

23 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 We haven't play football for a long time. *played*
- 2 It is been three years since I last went on holiday.
- 3 Nobody has ever spoke to me like that.
- 4 How long ago did you took up this position in the company?
- 5 We have finish tidying up our room, Mum. Can we go out now?
- 6 I have lost my wallet last week.
- 7 We haven't heard from Tom since a long time.
- 8 My mother has leaved her books at home again.
- 9 When have you sent the letter? I haven't received it yet.
- 10 Sheila has written a letter to me two months ago.
- 11 I know Betty for ten years. She is my best friend.
- 12 Maria has done her homework last night.

24 Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

since for yet already recently just always ago still ever

- 1 I haven't finished decorating the house *yet*
- 2 I have bought a new car. In fact, I have only had it for two weeks.
- 3 I haven't seen John a while.
- 4 She started to learn the piano three years
- 5 She hasn't finished cooking. The guests have already arrived.
- 6 We'll have to choose another film. I have seen this one.
- 7 Have you visited an old castle?
- 8 My mother has wanted to visit Hawaii.
- 9 It's ages I last saw you.
- 10 I have been having terrible headaches

VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: mixed

1 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

ask after	back out of	back up	burst in
care for	care about	carry on (2)	carry out (2)

- 1 You're old enough to know better, so stop *carrying on* (behaving) like a child.
- 2 When I saw John this morning, he (enquired about) you.
- 3 Although some protesters started shouting, the politician (continued) speaking.
- 4 Who's going to (look after) Gran while I'm in the States?
- 5 You can't (withdraw from) the agreement after you've signed the papers.
- 6 It's the duty of every police officer to (support) his or her colleagues.
- 7 Soldiers must (obey) orders without question.
- 8 I was in the queue at the bank when two men (entered suddenly) and told everyone to lie down.
- 9 It's easy for him to say he (isn't worried about) money because he's filthy rich.
- 10 Despite her inexperience, she (performs) all her secretarial duties to perfection.

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

catch on (2)	catch out	catch up with	check in (2)
check out (2)	check up on	clear up (2)	clear off
			close down

- 1 I have to go to the factory to *check up on* (make sure that everything is all right with) the work being done there.
- 2 You only have to explain it once for Alan to (understand).
- 3 When you (present your tickets) at the airport you must have your passport with you.
- 4 Why don't you just (go away) and leave me in peace.
- 5 Roller blading has (become fashionable) recently.
- 6 If the weather (improves), we'll go out this afternoon.
- 7 The hotel receptionist will give you the room key after you have (registered).
- 8 Since he has missed so much school he'll have to work hard to (reach the same level as) the rest of the class.
- 9 Let's go and (have a look at) the new amusement arcade, shall we?
- 10 They have (stopped using) the old cinema because the new one has opened.
- 11 You'll get your passport back from reception when you (leave).
- 12 He said he didn't have any money but he was (proved a liar) when he accepted our invitation to go to the casino.
- 13 You can't go out to play until you have (tidied) the mess in your bedroom.

Words easily confused

3

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

fake
false
artificial
imitation

- a Jackets made of *imitation* leather are much cheaper than those made of genuine leather.
- b Put your teeth in so I can understand what you're saying.
- c There was no fire. It was a(n) alarm.
- d He lost his job when it was discovered that his diploma was a
- e If a runner is responsible for two starts, he or she is disqualified.
- f Those flowers aren't real. They're
- g Old Mr Williams has a(n) leg.

2
succeed
manage
achieve
fulfil
able
capable

- a She success very early in her career.
- b We to complete the project in one week.
- c Robert never the promise he showed as a young pianist.
- d He'd most of his ambitions by middle age.
- e William in discovering the truth.
- f Will you be to take a day off work?
- g I'm quite of doing it myself.

3
chance
possibility
occasion
opportunity
bargain

- a The offer of a job abroad was a golden for me to make a fresh start.
- b The scarf was a at £10.
- c What are the of you getting a promotion?
- d It was a(n) on which you could speak to your boss on equal terms.
- e We've got a problem to solve so let's look at the , shall we?

4
gain
win
earn
beat

- a I think we can his team in the final.
- b She some money on the horses.
- c The chairman is said to about £25,000 a month.
- d Who the match?
- e Sally's mother says she's not losing a daughter but a son.

5
miss
lose
forget
leave

- a We'll be late if we the early train.
- b Have you your book at home again?
- c I think I to lock the door.
- d Could I borrow a pencil. I've mine. It's in my other pencil case.
- e I can't find my sunglasses anywhere. I suppose I must have them.

6	reject deny refuse resist refrain	a How can he losing the ring when he had it last. b Would visitors please from smoking. c I to help people who won't help themselves. d All my job applications have been e Although the cakes looked delicious, I the temptation to eat one.
---	---	---

7	way path route manner	a Do you know the to the cathedral? b If we go by the shortest, we'll get there by midday. c I enjoy walking along the in Sherwood Forest. d She has such a charming e I suppose that's one to save money.
---	--------------------------------	--

8	origin supply source stock	a Nobody knows the of the word. b I'll check to see if we have the CD in c A journalist should never reveal his d The country's oil were cut off during the war. e Explorers couldn't find the of the river.
---	-------------------------------------	--

9	interval gap rest pause	a The dog must have escaped through a(n) in the fence. b If you're tired, we can have a(n) c The film was so bad that we left during the d There are in the cassette which give you time to practise your pronunciation.
---	----------------------------------	---

10	borrow hire rent lend	a Harold denied that I had him the money. b We've a villa for the whole summer. c If I were you, I wouldn't money from anyone. d A surprisingly large number of people private detectives.
----	--------------------------------	---

11	number amount range quantity extent	a You can choose from a wide of books at this shop. b It's quality not that is important. c He has a large of foreign stamps in his collection. d I agree with you to some but we differ on a few points. e They have a large of money in a Swiss bank account.
----	---	---

Make and do

In general, **make** is concerned with creating and **do** is concerned with performing actions.

The tables below provide lists of common expressions with **make** and **do**.

Make +

an attempt	a mess
(an) arrangement(s)	a mistake
certain/sure	money
a complaint	a noise
a decision	a profit
a difference	progress
an effort	up one's mind
an excuse	one's way to
friends (with)	somebody feel better/younger
fun of	
a journey	

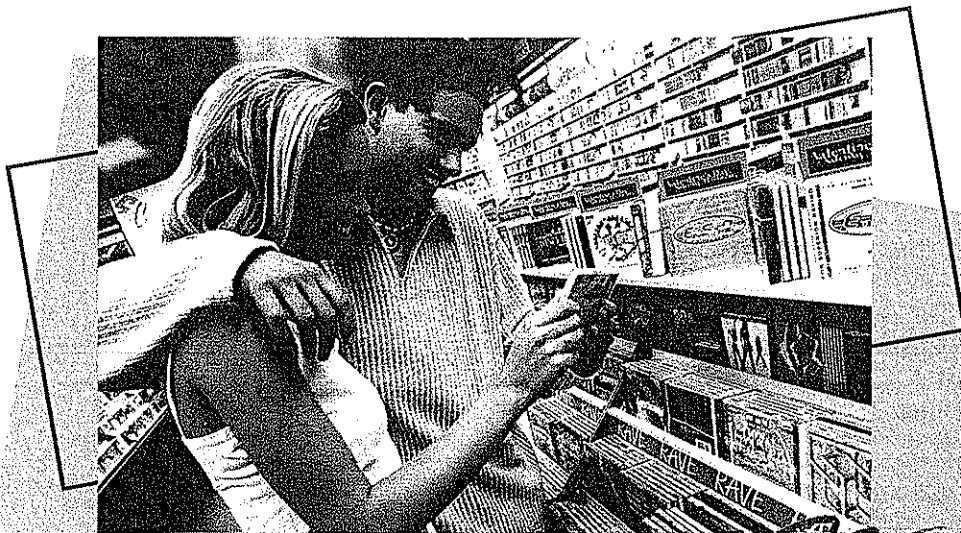
Do +

one's best
business (with)
damage
one's duty
an/some exercise(s)
homework
a favour
good
harm
work
wrong

4

Complete the following sentences by using **make** or **do** in the correct tense and form.

- 1 They *are doing* business with a Japanese company at the moment.
- 2 If you your best from now on, you good progress.
- 3 Thanks for me that favour.
- 4 That's the third mistake you today!
- 5 The high winds a lot of damage to houses last night.
- 6 Why don't you a complaint to the hotel manager?
- 7 you friends with the children next door yet?
- 8 I all the arrangements for the party.
- 9 He couldn't up his mind about the job offer.
- 10 Don't a mess while you your art homework.



Prefixes

The table below shows the most commonly used prefixes together with their meanings.

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
dis-	opposite/not	dislike, disappear
il-	opposite/not	illegal, illegible
im-	opposite/not	impossible, immodest
in-	opposite/not	incorrect, insensitive
ir-	opposite/not	irrelevant, irresponsible
inter-	between	international, intercity
mis-	wrongly	mistake, misunderstand
non-	not	non-alcoholic, non-smoker
over-	too much	overdo, overweight
re-	again	replay, reuse
un-	opposite/not	unfair, unkind
un-	reverse action	untie, unload
under-	too little	undercook, underweight

Word formation

5 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Adjective
(dis)comfort	(un)comfortable
reason	
(im)maturity	
health	
	(dis)loyal
(in)accuracy	
logic	
	(ir)regular
continent	
stop	
	silent
	(un>true
safety	
	(un)certain
	(in)efficient
	cruel
spectacle	
importance	
necessity	
	(dis)honest
popularity	
	anxious
science/scientist	
luxury	
emotion(s)	
	secret/secretive

6

Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- | | | |
|----|--|------------------|
| 1 | These new light bulbs are much more <i>economical</i> than the old ones. | ECONOMY |
| 2 | With the of Janet, we all enjoyed the concert. | EXCEPT |
| 3 | The minister's was quite unexpected. | ARRIVE |
| 4 | Despite the poor visibility, the pilot made a perfect | LAND |
| 5 | we won't be able to go on holiday this summer. | FORTUNE |
| 6 | What a performance that was. | MARVEL |
| 7 | Take this scarf with you in case it gets cold. | WOOL |
| 8 | Since the wall is not strong enough it will have to be | BUILD |
| 9 | It was a wonderful holiday – simply | FORGET |
| 10 | He won't tolerate any kind of | INTERFERE |

Preposition practice

7

Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

from on in of to at with for

- 1 *On* behalf of the senior partners, I would like to congratulate you *on* the way you handled the case.
- 2 Her pronunciation, particular, has improved but I am still disappointed her attendance record.
- 3 Bernard never gets tired listening classical music.
- 4 theory, the more advanced our technology becomes, the more likely we are to contact alien life forms.
- 5 There has been an increase the number of students leaving school the age of eighteen.
- 6 How can we prevent the cat jumping off the balcony?
- 7 She's tears all the time because you are so cruel her. One of these days she'll attack you.
- 8 We must find a solution this problem all costs.
- 9 Harold insisted staying bed despite the fact that he only had a slight cold.
- 10 You're not going to blame me your being debt.

PAST TENSES (2) & PRONOUNS

Past Perfect Simple & Continuous, Used To/Would, Personal Pronouns, Reflexive Pronouns, Possession

Past Perfect Simple

We form the Past Perfect Simple with **had + past participle**.

Form		
I/you/we/they had worked he/she/it had worked	I/you/we/they hadn't worked he/she/it hadn't worked	Had I/you/we/they worked? Had he/she/it worked?
Use	Examples	
<input type="checkbox"/> For an action that happened before another action in the past or before a certain time in the past.	<i>I had already finished cooking when the guests arrived.</i> <i>By the time we arrived, the match had already started.</i>	

Note: The Past Perfect Simple is used with *when, after, by the time, as soon as, till, until, before, by, already* and with phrases such as *It was the first time*.

*When I got home, **she had already left**.*

*By the time we reached the station, the train **had left**.*

*It was the first time she **had been to** Sweden.*

Past Perfect Continuous

We form the Past Perfect Continuous with **had + been + -ing**.

Form		
I/you/we/they had been working he/she/it had been working	I/you/we/they hadn't been working he/she/it hadn't been working	Had I/you/we/they been working? Had he/she/it been working?
Use	Examples	
<input type="checkbox"/> For an action which began before another action or time in the past and continued up to that time <input type="checkbox"/> For an action that had just finished at a certain time in the past but was still relevant at that time	<i>He had been waiting for Sally for an hour before she finally arrived.</i> <i>They had been running for hours and they were exhausted.</i>	

1 Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Simple or Continuous.

- When her parents arrived, she *had been doing* (do) her homework for three hours.
- As soon as she got home, she realised she (leave) her glasses at work.
- My brother (try) to repair the TV for two hours before I called him.
- Lisa (never see) such a beautiful painting until she went to the Museum of Modern Art.
- Amanda (work) as a waitress for three years before she became a singer.
- By the time the film ended, she (fall asleep) on the sofa.

2

Complete the sentences with one of the time expressions from the box.

for already since ~~after~~ by the time until

- 1 I started taking driving lessons only *after* I had bought a new car.
- 2 The train had already left we reached the station.
- 3 Sheila had been waiting for me four o' clock.
- 4 They had been trying to solve the problem three hours when they finally found the solution.
- 5 She had done her homework by the time her friend came to see her.
- 6 He didn't leave he had paid the bill.

3

Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Perfect Simple.

- 1 When I *saw* (see) Bill yesterday, he *hadn't sold* (not sell) his car.
- 2 The airplane (already take off) when we (arrive) at the airport.
- 3 As soon as she (enter) the house, she (realise) that somebody (break in) and (steal) all her furniture.
- 4 When I (arrive) at the cinema, my friend Alice (already buy) the tickets.
- 5 After I (tidy) my room, I (ask) my mother to let me go out with my friends.
- 6 By the time I (phone) her, she (already arrange) to go out.
- 7 That was the first time I (ever sing) on stage.
- 8 The moment the plane took off, I realised that I (leave) my glasses at home.

4

Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Perfect Simple or Continuous.

- 1 Mary *had been studying* (study) for ten hours before she went to bed.
- 2 How long (you / clean) your room when your mother (arrive) yesterday?
- 3 I (drive) for three hours when the accident (happen).
- 4 When she (see) the doctor, she (tell) him that she (not sleep) for three days.
- 5 The teacher (tell) us that he (teach) for ten years before he (come) to our school.
- 6 Until I (find) this job, I (search) for almost ten months without success.
- 7 Until yesterday, he (never ride) a motorbike before.
- 8 She (try) to explain why she (lie) to her parents when a policeman (call) to say that they should go to the police station.
- 9 By the time I (get) to the theatre, the play (start).
- 10 I (not start) tidying up until all the guests (leave).

5 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

Mary didn't start eating until all the family had sat down.

Mary waited until all the family had sat down before she started eating.

1 I didn't start reading until all the students had stopped talking.

I waited

2 My father didn't go to bed until both my brother and I had come home.

My father waited

3 I didn't invite my friends to the party until my mother had given me permission.

I waited

4 My teacher didn't start explaining the exercise until all the students had arrived.

My teacher waited

5 Emma didn't find a job until her children had started school.

Emma waited

6 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

It was the first time that she had lied to her parents.

She had never lied to her parents before.

1 It was the first time that I had eaten Indian food.

I

2 It was the first time that Samantha had driven a fast car.

Samantha

3 It was the first time that Lucy had taken exams.

Lucy

4 It was the first time that my parents had visited a foreign country.

My parents

5 It was the first time our teacher had shouted at us like that.

Our teacher

7 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

My mother already eat / when / I come home

My mother had already eaten when I came home.

1 Sally not finish painting the room / when / I call her

2 as soon as / I enter the house / I realise somebody break in

3 we / not start eating / until / all our guests arrive

4 by the time / the police arrive / the thieves get away

5 after / the famous actress win an Oscar / she retire

6 she not serve dinner / until / all the family come home

7 Natalie not graduate from university / when / they offer her a job

8 I finish my homework / by the time / I go to bed

Used to/would

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Used to + infinitive and would + infinitive are used to describe past habits which no longer exist. ■ The negative and question forms of used to are didn't use to and Did(n't)... use to... ? ■ Used to + infinitive is also used to describe past states which no longer exist. Would cannot be used in this case. 	<p>The whole family used to go for a walk on Sunday. Grandpa would sit and stare at the fireplace for hours.</p> <p>We didn't use to spend so much money in those days. Didn't she use to go sailing with Margaret?</p> <p>Harry used to be a journalist. Nancy used to have her own business.</p>

Be used to/get used to

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Be used to + -ing/noun/pronoun means 'be accustomed to'. ■ Get used to + -ing/noun/pronoun means 'become accustomed to'. 	<p>I am used to giving speeches so I'm not nervous.</p> <p>Don't worry. You'll soon get used to working with Mike. It took me a while to get used to his strange manner.</p>

8 Choose the correct alternative in each sentence.

- 1 He used to / would have long hair.
- 2 I'm not used to tell / telling other people what to do.
- 3 Have you got / been used to living in the city yet?
- 4 My father would to take / take us out for a meal on his birthday.
- 5 He isn't used to / didn't use to driving such a big car.
- 6 Graham wasn't used to / didn't use to the routine when he first arrived.
- 7 I could never get used to staying / stay out so late.
- 8 Did you use to get / getting a lot of pocket money?
- 9 They would / were used to send us a card every Christmas.
- 10 I would / used to understand German when I was a child.



9 Complete the sentences with **used to**, **would** or **be/get used to** in the correct form.

- 1 When I lived with my parents, I used to/would go to sleep at 9 pm, but now I've ... got used to ... staying up late.
- 2 I find it difficult to driving on the left. I think it will take me some time.
- 3 She never go out at night.
- 4 Mark will never learning history by heart. He finds it difficult.
- 5 When Sally worked for an advertising agency, she (not) leave work until 6 pm every evening.
- 6 The students studying hard as their teacher is very demanding.
- 7 Mary and her sister study together when they were students.
- 8 I having orange juice and eggs for breakfast.
- 9 His parents (not) eating out every night.
- 10 My father smoke, but he gave up when his doctor told him to stop.

10 Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

- When I lived alone, I used (cook) *to cook* for myself.
- Simon has great difficulty in getting used (live) alone.
- She is used (buy) expensive clothes.
- He will soon get used (tidy) his own room.
- My daughter is not used (drink) milk in the morning.
- Mary used (invite) all her friends to her parties.
- His mother is used (work) , so it will be difficult for her to retire.
- She used (train) for five hours a day when she was in the team.
- Your father will soon get used (eat) healthily if you help him.
- Molly used (eat) fast food but she doesn't any longer.

Personal Pronouns

Subject Pronoun	Object Pronoun
I you he she it	me you him her it
we you they	us you them

11 Complete the sentences with the appropriate subject or object pronoun

- I met John yesterday. *He* told me about the accident. *It* was really terrible.
- Sally didn't like her dress. We told that it was fine but she didn't believe
- Sam didn't invite Mel and Simon to the party. He didn't want to come.
- We asked Tom to give a lift.
- They are expecting your answer. Why don't you phone?
- Mum gave a wonderful present for my birthday.

Reflexive Pronouns

Form	Examples
myself yourself himself herself itself	<i>I painted my room myself.</i> <i>Martha hurt herself.</i>
ourselves yourselves themselves	<i>Are you enjoying yourselves?</i> <i>They built the house themselves.</i>

Note: We use **by** + reflexive pronoun to emphasise that we did something without help or that we were alone when we did something.

*I made the cake **by myself**.*
*He went to America **by himself**.*

12 Complete the sentences the appropriate reflexive pronoun.

- Sheila looked at in the mirror.
- He wrote it by
- Let me introduce
- We cooked the food
- They are really enjoying

13 Complete the sentences with the appropriate reflexive pronoun.

- You should really be ashamed of ... *yourself/yourselves* ... How could you do such a thing?
- The dog is looking at in the pond.
- The students couldn't do the exercise by
- Sheila says she doesn't need any help. She can do it by
- My mother cut with a knife while she was cooking.
- You haven't introduced What's your name?
- The guests enjoyed at the party yesterday.
- We redecorated our house by

Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Adjective	Possessive Pronoun
my	mine
your	yours
his	his
her	hers
its	-
our	ours
your	yours
their	theirs

14 Choose the correct word or phrase.

- I have a wonderful cat. *Their / Its* name is Kitty.
- Our / ours* house is really big. It has six bedrooms.
- This is not *yours / your* book. It is *my / mine*.
- Oh! I am sorry. I left *my / mine* purse at home.
- I have lost *my / mine* calculator. Can I use *yours / your*, please?
- Don't use this pen! It's *my / mine*. Why don't you use *your / yours* pen?
- 'Is this John's bike?'
'No, I don't think it's *his / him*.'
- I didn't know Susan was *your / yours* cousin.

Possessive Form ('s)

Tom owns this dog.
James owns this cat.

The boy owns this kite.
The girls own these dolls.
The children own these horses.

Betty and Jim own this house.
John owns this bike and Kate owns this bike.

Susan's cousin owns this car.

This is **Tom's** dog.
This is **James'** cat.

This is **the boy's** kite.
These are **the girls'** dolls.
These are **the children's** horses.

This is **Betty and Jim's** house.
These are **John's and Kate's** bikes.

This is **Susan's cousin's** car.

15 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- This car belongs to my father.
This is *my father's car*.
- Emma has a brother called John and a sister called Sue.
Emma is
- Mr Wallis owns this apartment.
This is
- This necklace belonged to Peter's aunt.
This was
- These two ski jackets belong to David and Patrick.
These are
- This boat belongs to Jennifer's father.
This is

16 Write the possessive form, as in the example.

book – the boy *the boy's book*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 dresses – the sisters | 6 sons – Tim and Molly |
| 2 bike – the friend | 7 room – the teachers |
| 3 toys – the children | 8 food – the baby |
| 4 bag – the woman | 9 video – James |
| 5 test – Sally | 10 house – Alice |

6 EXAMINATION PRACTICE

Use of English Practice Tests 1 & 2

Practice Test 1

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The 'Stockholm Syndrome'

Imagine the following (0) A (1) of bank (2) do not have time to escape because the police have the building surrounded. Automatically the (3) become hostages while the criminals (4) time deciding what to do. Outside the bank a crowd has gathered together with TV crews who provide (5) with live coverage of the incident. Experts appear and (6) what should be done in order to avoid a disaster. Back inside the building a relationship is developing between the hostages and their captors. They start (7) each other about themselves and the hostages begin to put the (8) on the police and authorities for the incident.

You may think that this could only be a scene from a Hollywood movie, but you would be (9) The phenomenon is (10) as the 'Stockholm Syndrome' because it was first observed in Stockholm, Sweden. The hostages helped their captors solve any problems they (11) up against and had no intention (12) letting the police harm them. They even stopped the police (13) down a door and shielded their captors when they all left the building together.

Nobody knows quite what (14) about this behaviour but it seems that the (15) of communication cannot be underestimated.

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 0 | a condition | b situation | c circumstances | d state |
| 1 | a group | b set | c gang | d team |
| 2 | a burglars | b thieves | c shoplifters | d robbers |
| 3 | a guests | b customers | c patrons | d clients |
| 4 | a pass | b spare | c do | d spend |
| 5 | a viewers | b spectators | c listeners | d congregations |
| 6 | a suggest | b insist | c persuade | d convince |
| 7 | a talking | b telling | c speaking | d saying |
| 8 | a accusation | b error | c fault | d blame |
| 9 | a false | b wrong | c mistake | d inaccurate |
| 10 | a called | b described | c known | d named |
| 11 | a came | b went | c stayed | d moved |
| 12 | a to | b from | c with | d of |
| 13 | a breaking | b pushing | c taking | d destroying |
| 14 | a caused | b brought | c resulted | d set |
| 15 | a cost | b worth | c value | d price |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Some spare time activities

Spare time activities basically fall (0) *into* two categories: traditional and modern. Traditional activities include pastimes such (16) collecting and reading while modern activities involve playing computer games, surfing the Internet and (17) television.

Children often become interested (18) collecting when they come (19) something their parents or grandparents have collected. Although they are keen (20) collecting when they first start, they very (21) become fed up (22) it as (23) as they reach their late teens. Reading is normally a leisure activity that develops with parental encouragement. Unlike collecting, reading is a pastime that people hardly (24) abandon.

Nowadays (25) are many modern activities which are based on modern technology and (26) is not unusual to find a teenager's bedroom full (27) computer games. While computer games are considered to be mainly a teenage pastime, surfing the Internet (28) always popular with both teenagers and adults. Another pastime which teenagers have (29) common with adults is sitting in front of the television. It is interesting to note that none of these activities involve having a discussion (30) important issues – something which was popular in the past.

C

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: This is my first fishing trip.

never

I have never been on a fishing trip before.

31 I met Sue at university.

since

I we were at university.

32 I don't remember Mary being such a difficult person in the past.

use

Mary such a difficult person.

33 Barbara was raised in a small village by her grandmother.

brought

Barbara's grandmother in a small village.

34 It takes three hours by car to reach the nearest hospital.

drive

It to the nearest hospital.

35 It is very unusual for Jack to be late for a meeting.

arrives

Jack for a meeting.

36 We got planning permission and then we started building.

soon

We started building as planning permission.

37 The growth of these plants was very slow in my back garden.

grow

These plants in my back garden.

38 I think what she said at the press conference was true.

truth

I think at the press conference.

39 She talks nonsense all the time and I can't stand it.

fed

I'm nonsense all the time.

40 What caused the machine to stop working this morning?

break

Why this morning?

D

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Why I won't get a mobile phone

- 0 Although many of my friends have a mobile phone and ✓
 00 look at me too strangely because I don't put one down too
 41 on the table when we go for a cup of coffee, I still refuse
 42 to buy one. Whenever we discuss about the advantages
 43 of having a mobile phone, I tell to them the story of
 44 a relative of mine who he was in Portugal on business.
 45 He was driving along the motorway on his way to the
 46 airport when his car broke it down. He had been
 47 given a number to ring in an emergency, so he used
 48 his mobile phone. He speaks fluently German and Italian,
 49 but no Portuguese and they could to speak no English.
 50 Unfortunately, he was spent a long time stuck on the
 51 motorway and he missed finally his flight. I am sure
 52 this has happened to others people so I will not buy
 53 a mobile phone until the manufacturers will organise
 54 a translation service for people travelling abroad.
 55 My friends say I always am too fussy but I only
 want the best.

E

For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Bringing families closer

A recent survey has (0) surprisingly revealed that home computers do not (56) relationships within families but do, in fact, bring children and parents together. A (57) number of parents have now become involved in their children's (58) activities through the computer, which appears to (59) bonds between family members. One further (60) reached in a report based on the survey is that children's (61) needs are satisfied when they consistently beat their parents at computer games.

The survey must come as a great (62) to those parents who were (63) about the wisdom of having a computer at home. Furthermore, parents who have so far shown no (64) to buy a computer due to the strong (65) they have of them may now do so.

SURPRISE
WEAK
GROW

EDUCATION
STRONG
CONCLUDE
COMPETE

RELIEVE
DOUBT
WILLING
SUSPECT

Practice Test 2

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Recycling in the office

Probably one of the most exciting new (0) in the field of recycling is a machine that can clean used photocopier paper. The device, (1) a decopier, uses a mixture of chemicals to loosen the ink from the paper. A brush then (2) the ink, (3) the paper clean and ready to be re-used. (4) the manufacturers, nothing like this has appeared on the market (5) They claim that the machine is (6) of cleaning a single sheet of paper at least five times. This is because the damage (7) to the paper by the cleaning chemicals is compensated for by a special chemical which causes an increase (8) the strength of the paper.

It is predicted that the machine will (9) on despite the high (10) The initial price of £30,000 will probably be too high for small companies but they will either be able to (11) one for a reasonable monthly sum or wait for a (12) smaller, cheaper version to be launched. Multinational companies will have a golden (13) to do their bit for the environment and will save £30,000 within 18 months, assuming they use 1000 sheets of paper a day. In addition to saving money and the environment, the machine will, to a great (14) , provide a (15) to improve security as it offers an alternative to shredding highly confidential documents.

- | | | | | |
|----|----------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 0 | a revelations | b inventions | c discoveries | d concoctions |
| 1 | a called | b named | c know | d described |
| 2 | a rejects | b resists | c removes | d refrains |
| 3 | a letting | b leaving | c losing | d resulting |
| 4 | a On behalf of | b As regards | c By reason of | d According to |
| 5 | a again | b since | c before | d yet |
| 6 | a capable | b able | c possible | d competent |
| 7 | a made | b exposed | c inflicted | d done |
| 8 | a to | b in | c for | d through |
| 9 | a catch | b get | c carry | d bring |
| 10 | a amount | b cost | c value | d worth |
| 11 | a take | b lend | c borrow | d rent |
| 12 | a slightly | b sparingly | c virtually | d fully |
| 13 | a chance | b opportunity | c occasion | d possibility |
| 14 | a length | b extent | c range | d amount |
| 15 | a route | b manner | c method | d way |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Staying attractive

For those people who (0) *find* it difficult to stay slim or are disappointed (16) their looks, there may be a solution (17) their problems on its way into their lives. Instead of going on diets or working out in the gym, (18) will be possible to take tablets to lose weight or stay young. These tablets which (19) be as easy to take (20) vitamin pills should be available in the next decade.

Researchers have discovered a gene responsible for producing a previously unknown protein, UCP2, in animals. This protein is the (21) important substance in determining whether excess calories are stored as fat or burned off as body heat. Recently, UCP2 has been found in human tissue and drugs which increase the (22) of this protein are being tested (23) the moment. (24) is also an exercise pill which acts as a hormone and increases metabolism. This pill will allow the user to lose about one kilo a month without (25) any exercise at all.

It is believed that the pituitary gland, where the growth hormone (HGH) is manufactured, is the key to youthful looks. HGH prevents skin (26) becoming 'loose' and stops arteries 'hardening'. Tests show that an increased level of HGH (27) people feel and look (28) younger. Pharmaceutical companies are going (29) develop special drugs called secretagogues to cause the pituitary gland to release more HGH (30) normal to help people hold on to their youth.

C

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: *It is a soldier's duty to obey his superior.*

carry

A soldier must *carry out his superior's* orders.

31 The rent was lower than I had expected.

as

The rent I had expected.

32 This is her first chess tournament.

never

She chess tournament before.

33 I've never looked after a dog before.

used

I after a dog.

34 Harry didn't turn off his stereo when we came in.

carried

When we came in, Harry his stereo.

35 His answer to the first question is wrong.

mistake

He the first question.

36 How can I reach the airport in the shortest time?

quickest

What's the airport?

37 She tried as hard as she could, but she failed.

did

She , but she failed.

38 Charles Dickens wrote his first novel when he was twenty-five years old.

age

Charles Dickens wrote his first novel twenty-five.

39 Karen will never let you pay her share of the bill.

insists

Karen her share of the bill.

40 There has been another increase in the price of petrol.

gone

The price of petrol again.

D For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

School reunions

- 0 The idea of school reunions has always been popular in ✓
- 00 the United States, where people see their former classmates every every
- 41 once a year. Apparently, the idea has also caught it on in
- 42 England since there are several them announced in the
- 43 newspapers every day. From many people's point of view, school
- 44 reunions are for those who like to show off or cannot
- 45 make their friends easily. When a person leaves
- 46 from school, a new chapter in their life is about to
- 47 begin. It is much more better to keep a few school friends
- 48 that you really like rather than it is to contact
- 49 with those that you did not really care about
- 50 them. Of course, it is only natural to wonder what
- 51 your old schoolmates have achieved and how they have
- 52 changed but, in most cases, they are not just the same
- 53 as they were at school. They are probably still
- 54 tell the same awful jokes and stories. I have not
- 55 seen most of my schoolmates again since I was at
school and I do not really want to.

E For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A better place to live

The recent (0) *success* of an animal charity in moving five tigers from an extremely (56) cage in Italy to much more (57) surroundings in England is another encouraging example of (58) cooperation between animal welfare organisations.

The tigers' (59) at a new home in Kent has brought hope to people who fight to prevent (60) to animals on a daily basis. (61) , not all animals can be liberated from the (62) conditions in which they are discovered. This is usually because of (63) delays in legal procedures and the fact that many courts are (64) to the needs of animals in captivity. In order to end this (65) suffering, there must be greater understanding of the problem.

SUCCEED
COMFORT
LUXURY
NATION

ARRIVE
CRUEL
FORTUNE
HEALTH
REASON
SENSE
NECESSITY

THE FUTURE

Future Simple & Continuous, Be Going To, Present Simple & Continuous, Future Perfect Simple & Continuous

Future Simple

Form		
I will (shall) leave you/he/she/it will leave we will (shall) leave you/they will leave	I won't leave you/he/she/it won't leave we won't leave you/they won't leave	Shall I leave? Will you/he/she/it leave? Shall we leave? Will you/they leave?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predictions Instant decisions Requests Promises Offers Threats Opinions about the future, introduced by verbs such as: <i>assume, believe, think, expect, suppose, be sure, know, hope</i> 	<p>He will probably be late.</p> <p>The telephone's ringing. I will answer it.</p> <p>Will you help me with my homework?</p> <p>I will do my best.</p> <p>I will pick you up after work.</p> <p>If you tell anyone, I'll kill you!</p> <p>I suppose he will be here in a minute.</p> <p>I think you will like the new CD.</p>	

Note: We say *Shall I ... ?* or *Shall we ... ?* when we want to offer or suggest something.
Shall I bring you a drink? Shall we go home now?

Future Continuous

Form		
I/you/he/she/it will be leaving we/you/they will be leaving	I/you/he/she/it won't be leaving we/you/they won't be leaving	Will I/you/he/she/it be leaving? Will we/you/they be leaving?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An action in progress at a specific time in the future An arrangement for the future To find out about somebody's plans when we want to ask them a favour 	<p>Don't call at 6 pm because I will be studying then.</p> <p>He will be going to France for his holiday this year.</p> <p>Will you be wearing your leather jacket tomorrow? If not, can I borrow it?</p>	

Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in the Future Simple or the Future Continuous.

- 1 I *will help* (help) you carry this armchair. Don't worry.
- 2 I think he (be) here soon.
- 3 Don't call me at 10 pm. I (have) a bath at that time.
- 4 'We don't have any more bread.' 'Don't worry. I (buy) some.'
- 5 This time tomorrow I (lie) on a beach in Miami.
- 6 I really don't know where I (work) this time next year.
- 7 This time next month I (ski) in the Alps.
- 8 It's a beautiful island. I am sure you (enjoy) your holiday there.
- 9 At 9 pm tonight, we (eat) dinner. You can join us if you want.
- 10 Don't visit your grandparents this afternoon. They (watch) a film at the cinema.

Be Going to

Form		
I am going to leave he/she/it is going to leave you/we/they are going to leave	I'm not going to leave he/she/it isn't going to leave you/we/they aren't going to leave	Am I going to leave? Is he/she/it going to leave? Are you/we/they going to leave?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ To express intention ☐ To make predictions based on present facts 	<p><i>I am going to fly to Paris tonight.</i></p> <p><i>Look at the clouds! It's going to rain.</i></p>	

Present Simple with a future meaning

Form		
I/you/we/they start he/she/it starts	I/you/we/they don't start he/she/it doesn't start	Do I/you/we/they start? Does he/she/it start?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ For programmed events ☐ For timetables 	<p><i>The concert starts at 8.30 am.</i></p> <p><i>The airplane takes off at 9.45 pm.</i></p>	

Present Continuous with a future meaning

Form		
I am leaving he/she/it is leaving you/we/they are leaving	I'm not leaving he/she/it isn't leaving you/we/they aren't leaving	Am I leaving? Is he/she/it leaving? Are you/we/they leaving?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ For a definite arrangement in the near future 	<p><i>I am having a party on Saturday night. Will you come?</i></p> <p><i>Are you coming with us tomorrow?</i></p> <p><i>I can't come with you on Tuesday. I am seeing the doctor.</i></p>	

Note: There must be a word or phrase that talks about future time unless this can be understood from the context.

2

Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the appropriate tense: Future Simple, *be going to*, Present Simple or Continuous. There may be more than one possible answer in some sentences.

- 1 I *am meeting/am going to meet* (meet) Jim at 9.30 tonight. You can join us if you want.
- 2 I (go) to Rome tomorrow.
- 3 (you / pass) the salt, please?
- 4 I (probably come) to see you some time next month.
- 5 The phone is ringing. I (answer) it.
- 6 The buses are on strike. I (give) you a lift.
- 7 We have to hurry. The plane (take off) at 9 am.
- 8 I (tell) her about it. I promise.
- 9 No one (ever know) the truth.
- 10 Where (we / meet)? What about Victoria station?
- 11 We (go) to a rock concert on Sunday. Would you like to come?
- 12 You didn't keep my secret. I (never tell) you anything again.
- 13 I suppose the teacher (explain) it to us.
- 14 (John / come) to the cinema with us?
- 15 It looks like it (rain). Look at those dark clouds!

3

Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the appropriate tense: Future Simple or *be going to*.

- 1 *Will you open* (you / open) the door for me, please?
- 2 I (look after) the children for you.
- 3 Where (put) your new stereo?
- 4 I (resign) from my job next month.
- 5 Isn't your television working properly? I (have) a look at it for you.
- 6 Look at that red sky. It (be) a nice day tomorrow.
- 7 I (not say) a word to anyone and that's a promise.
- 8 Don't worry. I (be) on time for the meeting.
- 9 We (play) tennis this evening.
- 10 I suppose he (be) on his way to London soon.

Future Perfect Simple

The Future Perfect Simple is formed using **will + have + past participle**.

Form		
I/you/he/she/it will have left we/you/they will have left	I/you/he/she/it won't have left we/you/they won't have left	Will I/you/he/she/it have left? Will we/you/they have left?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ For an action that will have happened before a certain time in the future ■ Normally used with a time expression beginning with By: <i>By then, By the end of..., By Monday...</i> 	<p><i>By the time they come home, I will have eaten my dinner.</i></p> <p><i>By Monday, I will have finished writing the report.</i></p>	

Future Perfect Continuous

The Future Perfect Continuous is formed using **will + have + been + -ing**.

Form		
I/you will have been waiting he/she/it will have been waiting we/you/they will have been waiting	I/you won't have been waiting he/she/it won't have been waiting we/you/they won't have been waiting	Will I/you have been waiting? Will he/she/it have been waiting? Will we/you/they have been waiting?
Use	Examples	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To talk about how long something will have been in progress at a certain time in the future. Normally used with a time expression beginning with By: <i>By then, By the end of..., By Monday...</i> 	<p><i>By the time they come home, I will have been cooking for two hours.</i></p> <p><i>By Monday, I will have been writing my novel for three months.</i></p>	

Time Clauses

Form	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Future tenses cannot be used in a time clause after words such as <i>when, as soon as, after, before, by the time, until</i>, etc. A present tense is always used. 	<p><i>As soon as I get home, I'll call him.</i></p> <p><i>When we are arriving at the airport, their plane will be landing.</i></p> <p><i>I will have finished decorating her room by the time she gets back from holiday.</i></p> <p><i>I won't tell her about it until you say it's OK.</i></p>
<p>Note: We use the Present Perfect Simple when we want to emphasise that one action is finished before the next one begins.</p> <p><i>By the time I have finished cleaning my room, lunch will be ready.</i></p>	

4 Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Simple or the Future Perfect Continuous.

- By ten o'clock, I *will have finished* (finish) doing my homework.
- When I arrive at 10 pm, Sarah (cook) for three hours.
- By next year, he (save) enough money to buy a house.
- By the time you get to the airport, your aunt (check in).
- By the end of this month, my father (work) for forty years.
- By the end of this school year, Mrs Thomas (teach) for fifteen years.
- In May, my grandmother (be) married to my grandfather for fifty years.
- By the time you get home, I (finish) tidying up.
- By the end of this year, Sue (drive) a car for twenty years.
- By the time Peter comes back, our friends (leave).
- By April, Polly (work) as a doctor for seven years.
- They (repair) this road by the time you visit this area again.
- They (build) the new hospital by the year 2006.
- By nine o'clock tonight, I (write) invitations for five hours.

5 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the examples.

By the time / you / arrive / I / eat / dinner
By the time you arrive, I will have eaten dinner.

By 8 pm / I / work / five hours
By 8 pm, I will have been working for five hours.

- 1 By next month / my mother / lose / a lot of weight
.....
- 2 By noon / I / paint / room / blue
.....
- 3 By May / Sam / learn / how to drive
.....
- 4 Jill / do / her maths homework / by the time / you / arrive
.....
- 5 By 9 pm / she / get ready / for the party / three hours
.....
- 6 My parents / drive / a day / by the time / they / reach / the village
.....
- 7 Our teacher / teach / twenty years / by the time / he / retire
.....
- 8 By this evening / I / make / all the preparations / for the party
.....
- 9 The Prime Minister / be / in office / four years / by the next election
.....
- 10 By the time / he / be / fifteen years old / he / learn / English / seven years
.....

6 Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Simple, the Future Perfect Continuous or the Future Continuous.

- 1 By the end of next month, I *will have been singing* (sing) in the church choir for ten years.
- 2 If Gerry is with them, they (talk) about politics.
- 3 I (work) late this evening so don't wait up for me.
- 4 By the year 2050, mankind (destroy) all the rainforests.
- 5 We (stay) with my aunt until we find another flat.
- 6 At the end of the academic year, Mr White (teach) geography at this school for thirty years.

7 Choose the correct word or phrase

- 1 I promise I will never lie / won't be lying to you again.
- 2 I *will work* / *will be working* at 9 pm. You can't come at that time.
- 3 Wait a minute. I *will get* / *will be getting* dressed very quickly.
- 4 Sue *will have been working* / *will work* here for ten years by the end of the month.
- 5 Mary *won't eat* / *won't have eaten*, so let's take her a sandwich.
- 6 Mum *will be finishing* / *will have finished* cooking by the time we arrive.
- 7 When I get home in the afternoon, my brother *will be watching* / *will watch* his favourite TV programme.
- 8 Don't forget. The plane *lands* / *will land* at 7 pm.
- 9 By the year 2008, John *will be* / *will have been* thirty years old.
- 10 By our next anniversary, we *will have been married* / *will be married* for fifteen years.

8

Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the Future Simple, Future Continuous or the Present Simple.

- 1 Mrs Thomson *will have been working* (work) in this firm for twenty years by the time she *is* (be) forty-six years old.
- 2 By the time he (graduate), he (study) economics for five years.
- 3 When my father (sell) the old car, he (buy) a new one.
- 4 When I (get) home, I (call) you right away.
- 5 You (not be able) to complete this exercise until I (show) you how.
- 6 I (turn off) the lights before I (leave).
- 7 As soon as I (finish) the washing-up, I (take) you to the station.
- 8 We (have) lunch when John (arrive).

9

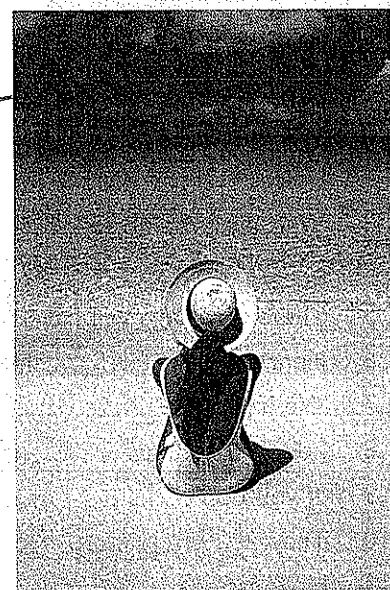
Find the mistake and correct the sentences.

- 1 When he will arrive, he will explain everything to me.
When he arrives, he will explain everything to me.
- 2 He will have cook for all of us by the time we get home.
- 3 She will never invited him to a party again.
- 4 Jane will be receiving my letter by now.
- 5 Jill will see a client from 9 am to 11 am. Don't call her then.
- 6 We are late for the train. It will leave by now.

10

Choose the correct sentence, A or B.

- 1 Can you come shopping with us tomorrow morning?
A Sorry, but I'll see my dentist tomorrow morning.
(B) Sorry, but I am seeing my dentist tomorrow morning.
- 2 I'd really like to meet you on Saturday.
A Great! I'm not doing anything then.
B Great! I don't do anything then.
- 3 What are you thinking about?
A This time tomorrow, I will lie on a beach.
B This time tomorrow, I will be lying on a beach.
- 4 This is the second time you've lied to me.
A Sorry, Mum. I'll never lie to you again.
B Sorry, Mum. I won't be lying to you again.
- 5 Can you give Tom this parcel for me, please?
A Of course, I can. I will have seen Tom today.
B Of course, I can. I am seeing Tom today.
- 6 Are you reading another book?
A Yes, I will be finishing it by this evening.
B Yes, I will have finished it by this evening.



VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: mixed

1 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

call back	call for (2)	call off	call out	call on	call up
count on	count in	count out	count up	cross out	

- If the match is on 20th April, you'll have to^{count}..... (exclude) me^{out}..... because my best friend is getting married.
- Tonight's meeting has been (cancelled) because some of the committee are ill.
- She had such a high temperature that we decided to (send for) a doctor last night.
- Being a primary school teacher (requires) a great deal of patience.
- You'll have to (put a line through) your mistakes because you can't erase them.
- He said he'd (come to our house to fetch) us so we don't need to use our car.
- I told her she could (visit) me whenever she liked.
- We can (rely on) Jane because she never breaks a promise.
- When I mentioned the job to Jack, he said we shouldn't (include) him unless he was going to be well paid for it.
- If anyone phones while I'm in the meeting, tell them I'll (return their phone call) later.
- In the event of war, men aged between 18 and 25 are (taken into the army) first.
- At the end of the day we (add up) the money in the till and put it into the safe.

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

cut across	cut down	cut down on	cut off (2)	cut out (2)
die down	do away with	do out of	do up	do without

- Several small villages have been^{cut off}..... (isolated) as a result of heavy snowstorms.
- Unless you pay the bill within the next three days, your phone will be (disconnected).
- Wait until the noise (comes to an end) before you begin your speech.
- By (reducing the amount of) waste, a company can increase its profit.
- The old cottage will have to be (redecorated and repaired) before we move in.
- Henry me (stopped from having) my share of the profits.
- We had to (bring to the ground) the old tree because the trunk was rotten.
- I don't think he's (suited) to be a teacher because he's not patient enough.
- 'If you don't (stop) this childish behaviour, you won't be in the team,' said the manager.
- They (got rid of) the one-pound note in Britain and replaced it with a coin.
- How can we (manage if we haven't got any) money when we have bills to pay?
- You can save time by (taking a shorter route through) the park.

3

Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

draw out	draw up	drop in	drop off	drop out
eat out	fall for (2)	fall in with	fall out	fall through

- 1 I *drew out* (withdrew) some money from the bank this morning so I can lend you £20 until tomorrow.
- 2 Her plans to open a shop (failed) because the bank refused to give her a loan.
- 3 The young actor (took an immediate liking to) the world-famous actress.
- 4 A car (stopped) outside the bank and two armed men got out.
- 5 It'll take a long time for him to (agree to) the changes we want to make.
- 6 I don't fancy cooking this evening so let's (go to a restaurant) instead.
- 7 Graham and Belinda (had an argument) last night so they're not speaking to each other.
- 8 You can (visit without making an arrangement) at any time you like.
- 9 I'm surprised that she (was deceived by) an old trick like that.
- 10 Only ten members took part. The rest (failed to take part) because of a flu epidemic.
- 11 I've got the car this morning so I can (take) you wherever you want.

Words easily confused

4

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	remind remember recall recognise memorise	a He'd changed so much that I didn't <i>recognise</i> him. b to switch off the lights when you leave. c She me of my cousin. d The spy the code and burnt the paper on which it was written. e me to phone Jack this evening. f Do you seeing her at the exhibition?
2	leak puncture crack tear	a I rode over a nail and got a in my front tyre. b There's a in the sleeve so I can't wear this shirt. c If the engine is losing oil there must be a somewhere. d There was a in the wall after the earthquake.
3	deck floor storey layer	a The cake had a thin of cream on top. b She lives in a three-..... house. c They work in an office on the fiftieth of a New York skyscraper. d The ozone is getting thinner and thinner. e There was a swimming pool on nearly every of the ship.
4	prescription recipe review receipt	a You can't exchange goods without a b The play received excellent c I found the for this meal in a magazine. d You need a to get this medicine. e Driving at such high speeds is a for disaster.

5	work job career post	a I think you should apply for the of sales manager. b He's been offered a in the local factory. c The journey to can take up to two hours. d A in journalism can be quite rewarding. e All he talks about is
6	fee tip reward charge payment	a I won't leave a if I'm not satisfied with the service. b A has been offered for information leading to the arrest of the kidnappers. c We deliver and install the system at no extra d The are so high at that school that few parents can afford to send their children there. e Unless we receive within a week, your order will be cancelled.
7	bite sip swallow lick suck nibble	a Being hungry, the dog the bowl clean. b this sweet and your sore throat will feel better. c Snakes can eggs that are several times larger than their head. d Stand still or the dog will you. e We gave the rabbit a carrot to f Instead of the champagne, he drank it in one gulp.
8	firm company industry factory	a She works for a law in the capital. b There was a large explosion at the this morning. c All the managers here have a car. d This country depends heavily on the tourist
9	nervous angry worried scared anxious	a I used to be of spiders. b For a few moments I thought the plane would crash. c Despite being an experienced actor, he still gets before a performance. d Where have you been? I have been about you. e He's with me because I made fun of him.
10	trial court jury sentence	a During the , several witnesses made false statements. b The consisted of seven men and five women. c If we can't agree on a solution, the matter will have to be settled in d The blackmailer received a three-year prison
11	object mind annoy matter disturb	a It doesn't what you wear to the party. b What really me is the way she acts when she can't get her own way. c I don't want to be Please leave me alone. d Don to anyone using his tools. e The flowers outside the murder victim's kitchen window had been f Would you helping me with the washing-up?

Word formation

5 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Verb	Adjective
sympathy	<i>sympathise</i>	.....	.....	.....	(un)discovered
.....	expect	.....	.....	-	(non)violent
.....	persuade	.....	.....	empower	.....
.....	shame	.....	legality	.....	.....
.....	.....	deep	.....	(dis)appear	disappearing
(dis)qualification	.....	.....	.....	blind	.....
.....	.....	short/shortish	(un)reliability	.....	.....
.....	(dis)encourage	.....	.....	.....	special
danger	.....	.....	.....	-	generous
.....	enable	.....	.....	apply	.....
.....	beautify	.....	.....	revolutionise	.....
.....	.....	deaf/deafening	.....	satisfy	.....
.....	.....	closed	creation/creativity	.....	.....
.....	.....	attentive	.....	.....	(un)familiar

6 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 All the new <i>machinery</i> is being delivered this afternoon. | MACHINE |
| 2 Has the bill arrived yet? | ELECTRIC |
| 3 What kind of do you have with your sisters? | RELATE |
| 4 Their decision to stop helping the handicapped can only be described as | HEART |
| 5 are advised to avoid unnecessary overtaking. | MOTOR |
| 6 He has dark hair. | CURL |
| 7 I enjoy sitting on the balcony in summer, when I am in good company. | SPECIAL |
| 8 Would you like to come to an meeting next weekend. | ATHLETE |
| 9 This soup is far too for me. | SALT |
| 10 I find it hard to long passages for homework. | MEMORY |

Preposition practice

7 Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

- | | | | | | | | | |
|--------|----|----|------|----|----|----|----|-----|
| out of | to | in | with | at | on | by | as | for |
|--------|----|----|------|----|----|----|----|-----|
- I telephoned the police station and spoke *to* the officer *on* duty.
 - Your reaction his promotion took me surprise.
 - This uniform is exactly the same the one I wore when I was school.
 - He's not a good mood because he's a strict diet.
 - Several people were injured when the coach collided a lorry.
 - We arrived the cinema time to have a cup of coffee before the film started.
 - What was Marie Curie famous ?
 - Your working a taxi driver is the question.
 - Please concentrate what you're doing.
 - I went holiday myself for the first time last year.

NOUNS, QUANTIFIERS & ARTICLES

Plural Nouns, Countable & Uncountable Nouns, Quantifiers, Definite & Indefinite Articles

Plural Nouns

Form			
The plural is formed by adding -s .	dog – dogs song – songs table – tables		
Nouns ending in -sh, -ch, -ss, -x, -o take -es to form the plural.	brush – brushes church – churches kiss – kisses box – boxes tomato – tomatoes <div style="float: right;"> BUT: kilo – kilos radio – radios piano – pianos <i>(words of foreign origin)</i> </div>		
Nouns ending in -y following a consonant take -ies to form the plural.	baby – babies lady – ladies <div style="float: right;"> BUT: toy – toys <i>(-y after a vowel)</i> </div>		
Nouns ending in -f or -fe take -ves to form the plural.	knife – knives life – lives thief – thieves wife – wives	wolf – wolves loaf – loaves shelf – shelves	BUT: belief – beliefs roof – roofs
Some nouns have irregular plural forms.	tooth – teeth foot – feet man – men woman – women	goose – geese mouse – mice child – children person – people	sheep – sheep ox – oxen deer – deer fish – fish
Some nouns have the same form in the plural.	a means – two means a series – two series a species – two species	a sheep – two sheep a deer – two deer a fish – two fish	
Collective nouns can take a singular or plural verb.	Our team is the best. <i>(We consider the team a single group.)</i>		
Certain words are always plural and take a plural verb.	clothes police trousers	pyjamas binoculars glasses	scissors spectacles scales

Gender: masculine & feminine nouns about people

Exceptions

boy – girl	nephew – niece	husband – wife
bachelor – spinster	widower – widow	man – woman
bridegroom – bride	father – mother	son – daughter
duke – duchess	king – queen	uncle – aunt
		prince – princess

baby
 child
 parent
 relative
 teenager
 cousin

1 Complete the sentences using the plural form of the nouns in brackets.

- 1 There were some intelligent *men* at the meeting. (man)
- 2 Scientific are made every day. (discovery)
- 3 We went to an island with many beautiful (beach)
- 4 James couldn't reach the top three of the bookcase. (shelf)
- 5 She saw two under the bed and started screaming. (mouse)
- 6 She went on a diet because she had put on ten (kilo)
- 7 Many animal are becoming extinct. (species)
- 8 Sarah didn't like any of her wedding (photo)
- 9 We saw some , some and some (fox, deer, sheep)
- 10 I broke two when I fell over. (tooth)

2 Write the plural form of the nouns.

- 1 child *children*
- 2 knife
- 3 foot
- 4 series
- 5 country
- 6 donkey
- 7 wolf
- 8 roof
- 9 man
- 10 fish

3 Write the masculine or feminine form of the nouns.

- 1 bachelor *spinster*
- 2 duchess
- 3 nephew
- 4 man
- 5 bride
- 6 wife
- 7 uncle
- 8 son
- 9 widow
- 10 prince

4 Find the mistakes and correct the sentences.

- 1 I met two boyes last night and we became friends.
I met two boys last night and we became friends.
- 2 Sarah doesn't like potatos.
.....
- 3 My parents had the time of their lifes when they went to Brazil.
.....
- 4 Some peoples believe that Mr Smith is a thief.
.....
- 5 He bought some peachs and bananas at the supermarket.
.....
- 6 I broke two toothhs in yesterday's match.
.....
- 7 Three babys were crying in the nursery.
.....
- 8 He mustn't play with knives. He should play with his toys.
.....
- 9 'The prison is full of mouse,' said the convict.
.....
- 10 Two thiefs were arrested by the police yesterday.
.....

Countable Nouns

Examples	
We can count countable nouns.	a fox – two foxes a child – three children
They have singular and plural forms and can take both singular and plural verb types.	The dog is under the table. The dogs are under the table.
We can use <i>a, an, the, my, etc.</i>	I sold my car . I bought a car .
In the plural we can use <i>some, any, many, few</i> .	I found some books in the attic. Few people came to the party.

Uncountable Nouns

Examples	
We cannot count uncountable nouns.	accommodation fun news advice furniture rubbish bread hair water chocolate information weather coffee litter wine damage luggage work equipment money
They are always singular and do not take <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> . They can take <i>some</i> .	I need an advice. I need some advice. I gave him an information. I gave him some information. I bought a new furniture. I bought some new furniture.
To show the amount of an uncountable noun, we can use expressions such as <i>a piece of, a bar of, a glass/cup/bowl of, a bottle of, a loaf of, a tin of, etc.</i>	I gave him a piece of advice. She bought two loaves of bread. He opened one bottle of red wine and two bottles of white wine.

5

Correct the sentences where necessary. If a sentence is correct, put a tick (✓) on the right. Otherwise, underline the incorrect word(s) and write the correct word(s) on the right.

- 1 Take the rubbishes outside, please. rubbish
- 2 There are some good news for you in this letter.
- 3 He gave me a useful advice.
- 4 The police were asking questions about Carol.
- 5 There was a marvellous scenery near our hotel.
- 6 The party was a great fun.
- 7 Your money has been transferred to our branch in York.
- 8 I've got a work to do so don't interrupt me again.
- 9 We're still waiting for some new equipments.
- 10 Meg's hair is naturally curly.

6 Complete the sentences with **a**, **an** or **some**.

- 1 I would like *some* information about the rooms in your hotel.
- 2 I'd like soup, please.
- 3 Mum, I need money to buy new notebook.
- 4 I watched unusual film at the cinema yesterday.
- 5 I bought new furniture when I was in Thailand.
- 6 Could you give me advice, please?
- 7 Could you buy loaf of bread, Tom?
- 8 I need equipment for my camping holiday.
- 9 Would you like cup of coffee?
- 10 He did damage to his car when he reversed into a building.



Quantifiers

Quantifiers	Use	Examples
much	With uncountable nouns (only in negative sentences and questions)	<i>I don't have much money. Is there much soup left?</i>
many	With countable nouns	<i>She has many friends. He didn't invite many people to his party.</i>
little	With uncountable nouns (= not much)	<i>She has little money. She can't come with us. She has little experience. She didn't get the job.</i>
a little	With uncountable nouns (= some)	<i>There is a little rice left. Help yourself.</i>
few	With countable nouns (= not many)	<i>He has few friends that he can trust. Few people go to the theatre nowadays.</i>
a few	With countable nouns (= some)	<i>There are a few boys playing in the yard. I saw a few people running down the street.</i>

7 Complete the sentences with **few**, **a few**, **little** or **a little**.

- 1 *Few* people applied for the job, so they put another advertisement in the newspaper.
- 2 I have time to watch TV. I have too much work.
- 3 Jack has friends in this town. It seems that nobody likes him.
- 4 I gave my teacher ideas for the class project. He liked them a lot.
- 5 In years, people will be using the Internet to do their shopping.
- 6 I have free time today. How about going to the cinema?
- 7 'Mum, I need advice,' said Sheila.
- 8 My father has patience with people who are rude to him.

8 Find the mistakes and correct the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 You mustn't carry many luggage when you travel.
<i>You mustn't carry much luggage when you travel.</i> | 5 There weren't much people at the concert.
..... |
| 2 I gave the police the informations they needed.
..... | 6 I gave you £50 last week. What did you do with them?
..... |
| 3 I would like you to give me an advice.
..... | 7 John, don't forget to buy a bread, please.
..... |
| 4 Yesterday's news were really shocking.
..... | 8 'The police is coming in a few minutes,' said the boy.
..... |

9 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use one word.

- | |
|--|
| 1 I went on a school trip last weekend, but not many students came.
I went on a school trip last weekend, but <i>few</i> students came. |
| 2 He told the visitors that he could only talk for a short time.
He told the visitors that he didn't have time to talk. |
| 3 I've only got a little luggage so I can carry it myself.
I don't have luggage so I can carry it myself. |
| 4 You didn't include enough information in your letter.
There was information in your letter. I need more. |
| 5 I really don't spend much money on clothes.
I spend money on clothes. |
| 6 Martha doesn't know many people in this town.
Martha knows people in this town. |
| 7 There weren't many guests at her party.
There were guests at her party. |
| 8 There isn't much water in that part of the world.
There is water in that part of the world. |

Definite Article – the

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the noun referred to has already been mentioned When it is obvious what is being referred to When referring to people of the same nationality and animals or things of the same kind When referring to something unique With superlatives With oceans, seas, rivers, deserts, island groups and mountain ranges With the names of hotels, theatres, cinemas, ships, newspapers and organisations When referring to something belonging to a specific person, place or time With certain adjectives 	<p><i>There were two men and a woman in the carriage. The woman was friendly but the men were not.</i></p> <p><i>Don't forget to lock the door when you leave.</i></p> <p><i>The Japanese respect tradition.</i> <i>The black rhinoceros has become very rare.</i></p> <p><i>Everyone knows what the Mona Lisa looks like.</i> <i>The sky is beautiful this evening.</i></p> <p><i>It was the most incredible film I'd ever seen.</i></p> <p><i>I would love to swim in the Indian Ocean, float on the Dead Sea, sail down the Nile, cross the Sahara, have a house in the Seychelles and float over the Alps in a hot air balloon.</i></p> <p><i>The Hilton hotel is near the Globe treatre.</i> <i>He's sailing on the Admiral today.</i> <i>I get the Daily Telegraph every day.</i> <i>She works for the Red Cross.</i></p> <p><i>The ice cream you can buy in Rome is quite different from the ice cream we have here.</i></p> <p><i>I donated some money to a charity called 'Guide Dogs for the Blind'.</i> (Other adjectives commonly used in this way are: deaf, elderly, old, poor, rich, unemployed and young)</p>

Indefinite Articles – a or an

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> With singular countable nouns mentioned for the first time To mean <i>per/each</i> in expressions of frequency To show job, nationality, political persuasion, etc 	<p>Have you got a pen you can lend me?</p> <p>I go to the gym twice a week.</p> <p>His wife is a dentist.</p> <p>He is an American.</p> <p>She is a Conservative.</p>
<p>Note: The indefinite article <i>an</i> is used before nouns (or adjective + noun) beginning with a vowel <i>a, e, i, o, u</i> and a few words beginning with <i>h</i> when the <i>h</i> is not pronounced.</p> <p>There is an apple on the table.</p> <p>It was an obvious solution.</p> <p>I'll see you in an hour.</p> <p>When <i>u</i> is pronounced 'you', it is preceded by the indefinite article <i>a</i>.</p> <p>Do you have to wear a uniform to school?</p> <p>This is a useless pen! Have you got another one?</p>	

	Examples
<p>Articles are not used</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> with countable nouns in the plural when we are referring to something in a general way. with abstract nouns. with names of sports, games, colours, days, months, drinks, holidays, meals and languages (not followed by the word <i>language</i>). with the names of countries (but <i>the Argentine, the USA</i>), cities, streets (but <i>the M5, the High Street</i>), squares, bridges (but <i>the Golden Gate Bridge</i>), parks, stations, individual mountains, islands, lakes, continents. <i>bed, church, hospital, school, prison, university, college, court</i> when referring to the reason they exist. 	<p>Lions are hunters.</p> <p>Life can be so unfair at times.</p> <p>Tennis is Rachel's favourite sport.</p> <p>Chinese is very hard to learn.</p> <p>I'm getting married in August.</p> <p>Nigeria is in Africa.</p> <p>Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in Europe.</p> <p>Lake Windermere isn't far from Liverpool.</p> <p>She was taken to hospital by ambulance.</p> <p>I've put your clothes on the bed.</p>

10 Complete the following sentences with **the, a** or **an** where necessary.

- Many people believe that *the* life of *a* doctor is *a* glamorous one.
- When I was at school, my favourite subject was geography because I enjoyed learning about continents like Asia.
- There was strange light in sky last night.
- peace is always preferable to war.
- Being engineer, he doesn't have time to play tennis.
- Where is book I lent you?
- How can you study in Germany if you can't speak German?
- George is making progress in all subjects.
- Only Mark made useful contribution to discussion.
- golf is not easy sport to master.

10 VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: get

1 Use the word **get** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

across down (2) away with by out of down to on ~~with~~ out away

- 1 It's important to *get on with* (have a good relationship with) your colleagues.
- 2 All this talk of unemployment (makes) me (depressed).
- 3 I don't know who's been stealing from us but they're not going to (avoid being punished for) it.
- 4 No matter how difficult the theory is, our physics teacher can (explain) it
- 5 We haven't got much money but I'm sure we'll (manage).
- 6 Ruth hasn't done the washing-up all week but she's not going to (avoid) it today.
- 7 If you want to make new friends, you'll have to (spend) more (time outside the home).
- 8 I thought I'd caught a big fish but somehow it managed to (escape).
- 9 How can I (make a written record of) what you say when you speak so fast?
- 10 I've got a lot of homework to do so I suppose I should (start doing) it right now.

2 Use the word **get** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

over round through (2) up ~~up to~~ together through to round to back

- 1 Don't leave the children alone for too long or they'll *get up to* (start doing) something (naughty).
- 2 We should (meet) for a cup of coffee some time.
- 3 Since the wind is (becoming stronger) I'd rather not go sailing today.
- 4 There must be something wrong with her phone because I can't (make contact with) her.
- 5 It didn't take him long to (spend) the money he won on the pools.
- 6 As soon as I've (recovered from) the operation, I'll be ready to go back to work.
- 7 Despite not revising very much, James (succeeded in) all his exams.
- 8 Sue can usually (persuade) her father (to do what she wants).
- 9 We must (recover) the CDs before Jane finds out they're missing.
- 10 There's a lot of cleaning to be done but I haven't been able to (find the time to do) it yet.

Phrasal verbs: give

3

Use the word **give** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

away (2) over to out back off up (2) in (2)

- 1 This room is ... *given over to* ... (used for) entertaining foreign visitors.
- 2 We have to (submit) our compositions by Friday at the latest.
- 3 Once the robber realised there was no escape, he (surrendered) himself
.....
- 4 I lent him some books last month but he hasn't (returned) them
to me yet.
- 5 My doctor advised me to (stop) eating junk food.
- 6 I (donated) many of my old books to the local orphanage.
- 7 Burning tyres (produce) thick, foul-smelling clouds of smoke.
- 8 I'm determined not to (surrender) to her this time. She can't always have what she
wants.
- 9 The way he spoke to his wife (showed) his true feelings towards her.
- 10 As the teacher was (distributing) the examination papers, my mind went blank.

Words easily confused

4

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	attention care notice attendance	a Jill attracted the waiter's <i>attention</i> by clicking her fingers. b The students took no of the 'No swimming' signs and dived into the lake. c Please pay to what I'm saying. d These boxes must be handled with e Your record in this class is very poor.
2	bruise sprain cut scratch scar	a Your ankle is not broken. It's just a b He's had a on his cheek since he was a child. c The boxer's face was black and blue from the he received during the fight. d It's a deep so it will probably need stitches. e She survived the crash with not so much as a on her body.
3	evidence fact proof sign	a There was no of a break-in at the scene of the crime. b All the points to suicide. c Without hard, he won't be found guilty. d The in this case speak for themselves. e If you can provide that you were somewhere else, you won't be convicted. f Articles cannot be exchanged without of purchase.
4	attitude view opinion approval	a From my point of it's a waste of time. b What provoked their hostile towards you? c My boss expressed her of the way I ran the office. d What's your of the new process?

5	common usual typical general ordinary	<p>a Eagles are not very in this area.</p> <p>b Photographing everything in sight is behaviour for a Japanese tourist.</p> <p>c I am familiar with office procedure.</p> <p>d Having seen nothing out of the, the security guard went back to his office.</p> <p>e For some reason, she didn't follow her routine.</p> <p>f After speaking to her, I realised we had nothing in</p>
6	alike same similar identical	<p>a The fingerprints found at the scene of the crime are to yours. You're under arrest.</p> <p>b He drives the make of car as my father.</p> <p>c They get on well together because they're so much</p> <p>d Your watch is to the one I have but mine has a leather strap.</p>
7	shoal pride pack swarm herd flock	<p>a We saw several of fish while snorkelling in the sea.</p> <p>b Suddenly a of bees started chasing them.</p> <p>c There used to be of wolves roaming these forests.</p> <p>d He has two sheepdogs to look after his of sheep.</p> <p>e As there was a of cattle in the field we decided not to cross it.</p> <p>f One of the park's major attractions is a of lions.</p>
8	lie lay spread scatter	<p>a The demonstrators when the riot police appeared.</p> <p>b On average our hens one egg a day.</p> <p>c The detectives out and searched the field for the murder weapon.</p> <p>d Could you help me the table, please?</p> <p>e down if you feel unwell.</p> <p>f A package unopened on the table.</p>
9	age period term time	<p>a Her uncle spent two brief working in Asia.</p> <p>b In this day and up-to-date information is vital.</p> <p>c We get our school reports at the end of</p> <p>d Do you remember the when we went to Brands Hatch?</p> <p>e We have history first on Monday morning.</p>
10	state condition situation position	<p>a We've bought a second-hand car in excellent</p> <p>b Finding herself in a of power has changed her completely.</p> <p>c The got worse and worse until war broke out a year later.</p> <p>d Your children are in an excellent of health.</p>
11	harm injury wound damage pain	<p>a He still bears the scars of a gunshot on his right leg.</p> <p>b A serious back forced him to miss most of last season.</p> <p>c Brenda was in quite a lot of after the operation.</p> <p>d Fortunately, the storm did little to our property.</p> <p>e A little exercise won't do you any !</p>

Word formation

5 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Verb	Adjective
boredom	bore	.....	.....	.....	threatening
.....	mystify	.....	.....	encircle	.....
.....	-	neighbourly	profit	.....	.....
.....	.....	excited/exciting	kindness	-	.....
prediction	.....	(un)prepared	.....	refuse	-
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	endless
invitation	.....	preventive	.....	.....	(un)communicative
.....	detect	.....	fluency	-	.....
.....	.....	explanatory	.....	isolate	.....
.....	risk	.....	completion	.....	.....
.....	.....	surviving	.....	.....	defensive
.....	accept	.....	.....	hide	visiting
protection	.....	.....	-	(dis)please	.....
.....

6 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1 Under <i>favourable</i> conditions we can reach the nearest island in two hours. | FAVOUR |
| 2 His ambition is to become a concert | PIANO |
| 3 She studied at university. | ECONOMY |
| 4 They are so good at doubles that they are virtually | BEAT |
| 5 You'd better not drive if it is | FOG |
| 6 Neither of us have any to your going on holiday with your friends. | OBJECT |
| 7 Without our racing team will face financial difficulties. | SPONSOR |
| 8 The of students were in favour of the proposal. | MAJOR |
| 9 If it's, throw it away. | USE |
| 10 Have you ever met a film star? | FAME |

Preposition practice

7 Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

with under of by to for on in at

- My parents went shopping and we stayed *at* home.
- He's annoyed you for not getting in contact him.
- all means bring your dog but keep it control.
- You must believe yourself if you want to succeed reaching the top your chosen career.
- Margaret is a great deal of pressure the moment.
- My father gave me a clock which once belonged his grandfather.
- my mind, everyone is responsible the problems caused by pollution.
- times you remind me your grandmother.
- If it happened accident, why would they put the blame you?
- People are quite prepared to spend large sums money their children's education.

Can, Could & Be Able To, Must & Have To, May/Might, Should, Needn't

Can, Could & Be Able To

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ We use can + bare infinitive <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to talk about ability in the present or future. - to talk about or ask for permission. - to make requests. ■ We use could + bare infinitive <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to talk about a general ability in the past. - to ask for permission in the present or future. - to make a polite request in the present. ■ We use be able to in a variety of simple tenses <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - to talk about ability. - to talk about one specific occasion when we managed (or didn't manage) to do something. 	<p>He can play the piano. Can I go to the cinema tonight, Mum? Can you buy some milk on your way home, please?</p> <p>I could play chess when I was young. Could I use your telephone, please? Could I have another cup of tea, please?</p> <p>I won't be able to come to your party. He was able to save the boy from drowning. They weren't able to find tickets for the concert.</p>

Note: With verbs of senses, we use *could* and not *be able to*.
 We **could hear** the sea from our hotel room.
 She **could see** that Laura had had her hair cut.

Complete the following sentences by using **can(t)**, **could(n't)** or the correct form of **be able to**.
 Some sentences can be completed in more than one way.

- 1 Fortunately, we *were able to* reach the airport in time for our flight.
- 2 They find a solution to the problem yet.
- 3 I have some more chocolate, please?
- 4 Although I tried hard, I beat the club champion.
- 5 She type as well as anyone I know.
- 6 I'd like choose my own working hours.
- 7 you hear the teacher clearly from the back of the room?
- 8 Both his sisters play a reasonably good game of chess at the age of five.
- 9 We see most of the city from the top of the hill.
- 10 Yes, you borrow my dress at the weekend.
- 11 He persuade his parents to let him go on holiday with his friends.
- 12 Sally come to lunch tomorrow; she's working.

Must & Have To

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Must + bare infinitive and have to + bare infinitive express obligation. Must not (mustn't) expresses prohibition. Do not (don't) have to talks about something that is not a necessity. 	<p>All visitors must provide proof of identity. You have to read chapter six tonight because we're discussing it in class tomorrow.</p> <p>Students must not eat in the classroom.</p> <p>You don't have to go to the party if you don't want to.</p>
<p>Note: <i>Must</i> is not often used in the interrogative form.</p>	

2 Study the examples and rewrite the sentences.

It is necessary for her to study more.

She *has to study more.*

It isn't necessary for her to work.

She *doesn't have to work.*

1 It is necessary for Mary to ask her parents first.

Mary

2 It isn't necessary for my mother to cook for my party.

My mother

3 It is unnecessary for my father to pay for my bike.

My father

4 It isn't necessary for Mrs Brown to water the flowers every day..

Mrs Brown

5 It isn't necessary for him to wait in the queue.

He

6 It is unnecessary for you to worry about the exams.

You

3 Complete the sentences with **must** or **have to** in the appropriate form. Some sentences can be completed in more than one way.

1 You *mustn't* (not) lie to your parents.

2 This year, I (not) get up early every day, but last year I
..... get up early each morning.

3 Sheila (not) bring so much food to the party yesterday. It wasn't necessary.

4 You (not) come to tomorrow's meeting if you don't want to.

5 Since his wife's death, he take care of his two children all by himself.

6 Jim finish the report by next month.

7 My teacher told me that I study more if I wanted to pass.

8 You (not) play music very loudly at night.

9 She will be rich when she reaches the age of thirty. She (not) work.

10 I stop playing tennis when I broke my leg last year.

4 Complete the sentences with **mustn't** or **don't/doesn't have to**.

- 1 You *don't have to* come with me if you don't want to.
- 2 Children disobey their parents.
- 3 He rush. He's got plenty of time.
- 4 Peter write to his friend, John, as he is seeing him next weekend.
- 5 Children touch electrical wires.
- 6 You play your music loud at night when people are sleeping.
- 7 I go to bed early tonight.
- 8 Drivers throw litter out of car windows.

Can't & Must

Use	Examples
<p>■ We use can't for negative deductions about the present.</p>	<p>He can't be at work. He's ill. He can't be working. I can hear music.</p>
<p>■ We use must for positive deductions about the present.</p>	<p>He must be at work. It's Monday morning. He must be working. The light in his office is on.</p>

5 Study the examples and then rewrite the sentences.

I am sure he isn't at home now.
I am sure he isn't working now.

He *can't be at home now*
He *can't be working now*

- 1 I am sure Susan isn't at work now. She left the office an hour ago.
Susan
- 3 I am sure my mother isn't cooking again. I saw her cooking at noon.
My mother
- 4 I am sure Mary doesn't study for three hours a day. She isn't a good student.
Mary
- 5 I am sure that your son isn't doing his homework in his room. I saw him in the garden.
Your son
- 6 I am sure she doesn't spend much money. She is poor.
She

6 Study the examples and rewrite the sentences.

I am sure she is at home now. She *must be at home now.*
 I am sure she works very hard. She *must work very hard.*
 I think she is doing her homework now. She *must be doing her homework now.*

- 1 I am sure she is at the office now. I just spoke to her on the phone.
 She
- 2 I think my mother is on her way home. She isn't answering the phone at work.
 My mother
- 3 I am sure Wendy is in Rome now. She got on the plane hours ago.
 Wendy
- 4 I think my teacher exercises everyday. He's very fit.
 My teacher
- 5 I am sure my sister is talking on the phone now. The line is busy.
 My sister

7 Complete the sentences with **must** or **can't**.

- 1 The line is busy. That *must* be Jane. She's always talking on the phone.
- 2 That be Mary over there. She went to Paris on Monday.
- 3 She looks very young. She be over thirty.
- 4 He has three expensive cars. He be a rich man.
- 5 That be Sue; if it is, she has changed a lot.

Can't Have & Must Have

Use	Examples
<p>■ We use can't have + past participle for negative deductions about the past.</p>	<p>She can't have been away last week. She can't have left yesterday. She can't have been travelling last night.</p>
<p>■ We use must have + past participle for positive deductions about the past.</p>	<p>He must have been angry last night. He must have argued with his wife. They must have been fighting about money.</p>



8

Rewrite the sentences using **can't have**.

1 I am sure she didn't know the answer.

She *can't have known the answer.*

2 I am sure we didn't leave the car keys at home.

We

3 I am sure she didn't come home early last night.

She

4 I am sure this man didn't steal my wallet.

This man

5 I am sure he wasn't lying to you about last night.

He

6 I am sure they weren't happy in that house.

They

7 I am sure she hasn't been sleeping well lately.

She

8 I am sure you didn't see Helen at the cinema yesterday.

You

9

Rewrite the sentences using **must have**.

1 I am sure she arrived late for the interview.

She *must have arrived late for the interview.*

2 I am sure she has told him everything.

She

3 I am sure she was eating when I called.

She

4 I am sure she had invited him before I told her to.

She

5 I am sure she got up late this morning.

She

6 I am certain my sister was talking on the phone all morning.

My sister

7 I am sure she was feeling tired; that's why she went home.

She

8 I am sure James forgot to invite Alice to the party.

James

9 I am sure he had studied a lot before the exam.

He

10 I am sure they were on holiday because the house looked empty.

They

11 I am sure our neighbour called the police.

Our neighbour

12 I am sure you left your bag on the bus.

You

Use **must have** or **can't have** with the past participle of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.

- 1 'Did they go to the cinema yesterday?'
'They *must have gone* (go) because there was no one at home when I called.'
- 2 Kate is exhausted. She (work) hard in the garden today.
- 3 Susan's telephone was out of order yesterday. She (phone) you.
- 4 She hadn't seen him before, so she (recognise) him.
- 5 I called her twice but she didn't answer the phone. She (sleep).
- 6 'John translated the letter for me.'
'He doesn't speak French, so he (translate) it.'
- 7 Emma has been at home all day. You (see) her at the restaurant.
- 8 She asked me for money again. She (spend) all the money I gave her.
- 9 He (work) for more than ten hours yesterday. That's why he is so tired today.
- 10 It only takes two hours to fly from London to Rome. She (fly) for four hours.

May/Might & May Have/Might Have

Use	Examples
■ We use may/might (not) + bare infinitive for possibility about the present.	We may be at home this afternoon. We might not go to the park. We may be watching TV.
■ We use may/might (not) have + past participle for possibility about the past.	He might have been at home yesterday. He may not have gone to school. He may have been feeling ill.

II

Study the examples and rewrite the sentences.

Perhaps she is at home now.

She *may/might be at home now*

Perhaps she works a lot.

She *may/might work a lot*

It is possible that she is working now.

She *may/might be working now*

- 1 It is possible that she is coming home, but I am not sure.
She
- 2 Perhaps she is much older than she says.
She
- 3 Perhaps he is studying in his room.
He
- 4 It is possible that he will pass his exams.
He
- 5 It is possible that the Browns are moving house, but I am not sure.
The Browns

12 Rewrite the sentences using **may/might have** or **may/might not have**.

- 1 Perhaps she hasn't arrived yet.
She *may/might not have arrived yet*.
- 2 Perhaps my sister took my pen without asking.
My sister
- 3 Perhaps my parents have gone out.
My parents
- 4 I think they were sleeping when I came in, but I am not sure.
They
- 5 Perhaps John was listening to music.
John
- 6 Perhaps there were a lot of people at the theatre.
There
- 7 Perhaps the robbers left fingerprints all over the house.
The robbers
- 8 Perhaps she wasn't listening and that's why she didn't answer.
She
- 9 Perhaps our son didn't know anything about it.
Our son
- 10 Perhaps you haven't heard about the bank robbery.
You

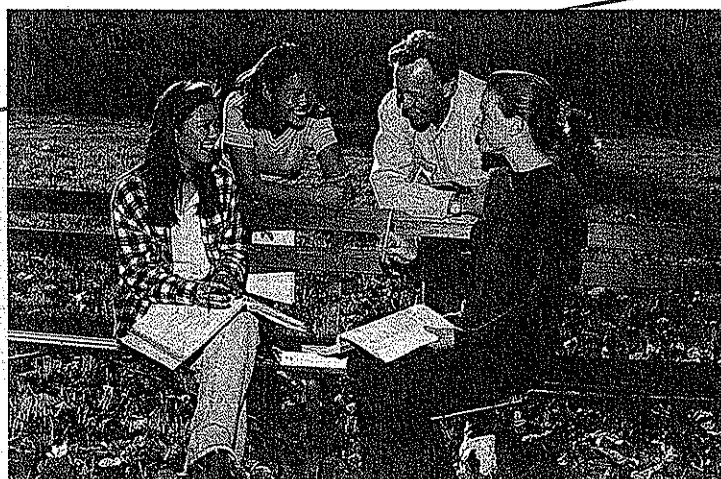
Should/Ought To & Should Have/Ought To Have

Use	Examples
<p>■ We use should (not)/ought (not) to + bare infinitive for advice or obligation.</p>	<p>You shouldn't spend so much time playing computer games. We ought to be on time for the wedding. We should be sunbathing tomorrow afternoon.</p>
<p>■ We use should (not) have/ought (not) to have + past participle for criticism or regret.</p>	<p>You ought to have told the truth. He should have been at the meeting. I shouldn't have stayed up to watch the film last night.</p>

13 Complete the sentences by using **should** or **ought to** and the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

- 1 I'm ready to burst. I *shouldn't/ought not to have eaten* (eat) so much.
- 2 You (use) your car so often. More exercise will do you good.
- 3 Henry (wash) his car. He nearly always does it on Sunday afternoon.
- 4 You (follow) the instructions on the box. Now you've ruined everything.
- 5 We (have) the party at the weekend. Then more people would have come.
- 6 I suppose I (revise) for my exams right now but I just don't feel like it.

- 1 Tom was supposed to be sleeping.
Tom *should have been sleeping*.
- 2 Jim was supposed to bring all the documents.
Jim
- 3 My brother didn't buy any food for the party.
My brother
- 4 He didn't arrive on time for the rehearsal.
He
- 5 She waited for me.
She
- 6 Molly went out yesterday.
Molly
- 7 Ben lied to his parents.
Ben
- 8 My brother didn't mention the accident.
My brother
- 9 Our neighbour was playing music loudly last night.
Our neighbour
- 10 She was watching TV until late last night.
She
- 11 My sister didn't phone to say that she would be late.
My sister
- 12 My father wasn't driving carefully.
My father
- 13 Our teacher didn't tell us about the test.
Our teacher
- 14 Emma was shouting at the children.
Emma
- 15 He didn't finish his homework.
He



Needn't Have & Didn't Have To

Use	Examples
■ We use needn't have + past participle when somebody has done something that was not necessary.	You needn't have brought flowers, but thanks anyway.
■ We use didn't have to + bare infinitive when somebody hasn't done something because it wasn't necessary.	I didn't have to go to school today because it was a holiday.

15 Write sentences using **needn't have** or **didn't have to**.

1 It was unnecessary for you to bring all this food. You're very kind.

You *needn't have brought all this food*.

2 It wasn't necessary for me to get up early this morning; that's why I slept till late.

I

3 I didn't go shopping today. It wasn't necessary.

I

4 She watered the flowers this morning but it rained later.

She

5 My mother didn't cook today. It wasn't necessary.

My mother

6 I studied for the test, but it was unnecessary.

I



16

Circle the correct word or phrase.

- 1 We shall / can stay in and watch a film if you like.
- 2 Little children *mustn't* / *needn't* lie to their parents.
- 3 If you feel ill, you *may* / *should* see a doctor.
- 4 I *must not* / *may not* be able to come to the meeting on time. I am not sure.
- 5 You *mustn't* / *don't have to* drive if you have been drinking alcohol.
- 6 Susan *needn't* / *mustn't* cook for us. We have already eaten a lot.
- 7 *Must* / *Will* I tidy my room now, Mum?
- 8 She *can't* / *mustn't* be listening to music. The CD player doesn't work.
- 9 *Must* / *May* I sit here, please?
- 10 Tom *can't* / *must* be on his way to Rome. The plane took off an hour ago.

17

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 I am sure he is working overtime again.
He must be working overtime again.
- 2 I'm sure he doesn't get good marks. He never does any work.
He
- 3 It isn't necessary for you to come with me. I can manage on my own.
You
- 4 Perhaps he will be travelling to Paris this time tomorrow.
He
- 5 I am sure she is writing a letter to her cousin.
She
- 6 Perhaps he doesn't know how to swim.
He
- 7 It isn't necessary to drive to the concert. You can take the bus.
You
- 8 I am sure he doesn't know how to drive a car. He's only fifteen.
He

18

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word.

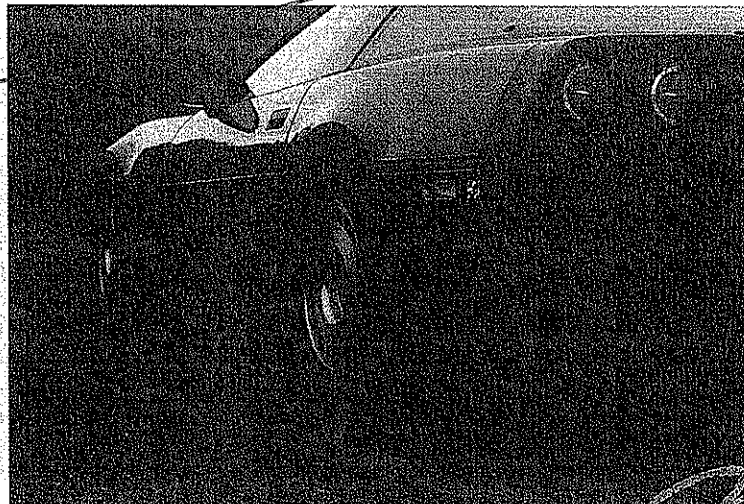
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Pam knows how to play the piano.
CAN
Pam <u>can play</u> the piano. | 6 You are not allowed to go out tonight.
NOT
You out tonight. |
| 2 It isn't necessary for her to finish the report today.
HAVE
She the report today. | 7 It is possible that we will win the game.
MAY
We the game. |
| 3 I am sure Molly is at the dentist's.
BE
Molly the dentist's. | 8 I am sure she is typing the letter now.
BE
She now. |
| 4 It is forbidden to smoke here.
NOT
You here. | 9 I am sure he is trying his best.
MUST
He his best. |
| 5 I am sure this isn't the place we are looking for.
BE
This we are looking for. | 10 Your doctor advises you to stop smoking.
OUGHT
You smoking. |

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence using the word given. Do not change the word.

- 1 Sheila managed to finish her report in one day.
Sheila *was able to finish* her report in one day. **WAS**
- 2 It was not necessary for you to buy a present for me.
You a present for me. **HAVE**
- 3 Perhaps your son took your car.
Your son your car. **HAVE**
- 4 I'm sure that you didn't see Mary in the city centre.
You Mary in the city centre. **SEEN**
- 5 I am sure my mother cooked this delicious meal.
My mother this delicious meal. **COOKED**
- 6 Thank you very much for the sweets. It wasn't necessary.
You sweets with you. **BROUGHT**
- 7 You didn't ask your parents first.
You first. **HAVE**
- 8 You didn't pass because you didn't study enough.
You more in order to pass. **SHOULD**
- 9 I am sure that isn't Ben because he is in Atlanta.
That Ben. He is in Atlanta. **BE**
- 10 You ought to see a doctor about that cold.
You a doctor about that cold. **SHOULD**
- 11 It wasn't necessary for Jim to work late last night, so he came home.
Jim late last night, so he came home. **HAVE**
- 12 It is forbidden to park your car on the pavement.
You car on the pavement. **NOT**
- 13 I am sure that man didn't participate in the robbery.
That man the robbery. **HAVE**
- 14 Perhaps he left his car keys at home.
He car keys at home. **HAVE**
- 15 Perhaps Jane is at the supermarket.
Jane at the supermarket. **BE**
- 16 It is forbidden to smoke in here.
You in here. **NOT**
- 17 I am sure he was eating when I called.
He when I called. **BEEN**
- 18 Perhaps Mary didn't see you.
Mary you. **MIGHT**

Modal Verbs

Modal	Use	Examples
Can	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> General ability (present or future) Permission Request 	<p>He can drive a lorry.</p> <p>You can go out after you have studied.</p> <p>Can you help with this suitcase, please?</p>
Can't	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inability Impossibility 	<p>I can't understand this exercise.</p> <p>That can't be his mother. She's too young.</p>
Could	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> General ability (past form of can) Asking for permission Polite request 	<p>He could play chess when he was six.</p> <p>Could I borrow your pen, please?</p> <p>Could you post this letter for me, please?</p>
Be able To	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> General ability (in place of can) Specific past ability (could is not possible here) 	<p>She will be able to come to dinner next week.</p> <p>Ian was able to collect her from school.</p>
Must	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Obligation Certainty 	<p>You must wear a seat belt when driving.</p> <p>He must be out. There aren't any lights on.</p>
Have To	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Obligation/necessity 	<p>He has to visit his grandfather.</p> <p>We don't have to water the plants.</p>
May	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Possibility Permission 	<p>It may rain tonight.</p> <p>You may go out now if you want.</p>
Might	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Possibility 	<p>Call him now because he might be out later.</p>
Should/Ought To	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Advice Obligation 	<p>You should see a dentist.</p> <p>I ought to stay in tonight and do some revision.</p>
Needn't	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lack of necessity 	<p>You needn't worry about the test. It's easy.</p>



Use of English Practice Tests 3 & 4

Practice Test 3

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A new breed of superstar

Although most people become famous because of their involvement in politics, sport or acting, there are some who become household names through professions that were once (0) of as simply respectable. Take lawyers, for example. Getting a (1) with a top law (2) may not only ensure financial security due to the astronomical (3) lawyers can command but it may also bring the same superstar status (4) that of a screen idol. Indeed, there can be very few Americans who would not (5) the name of the independent public prosecutor, Kenneth Starr, in connection with the case involving President Clinton's relationship with Monica Lewinsky.

Like politicians, sports stars and actors, a person must be (6) out to be a lawyer in order to be successful. Firstly, a persuasive character is essential as getting every (7) of the jury to (8) in with your line of argument is of prime importance. Secondly, the (9) to judge character is vital since a witness's reaction (10) a question may be more significant than the answer given. Thirdly, calmness under pressure is extremely important. A good lawyer must never get (11) with an uncooperative witness who (12) to answering questions directly. This would be a (13) for disaster. Finally, leadership qualities are fundamental. Top lawyers do not have the time to (14) all the research necessary in a case by themselves. As a result, they have to set an example for the team of lawyers under their command so that they can (15) on the team to work conscientiously.

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 0 | a looked | b regarded | c considered | d thought |
| 1 | a work | b profession | c career | d job |
| 2 | a company | b firm | c industry | d business |
| 3 | a tips | b charges | c rewards | d fees |
| 4 | a like | b with | c as | d from |
| 5 | a recognise | b remind | c memorise | d retain |
| 6 | a suited | b cut | c stood | d made |
| 7 | a onlooker | b partner | c member | d associate |
| 8 | a go | b call | c get | d fall |
| 9 | a certainty | b capability | c willingness | d ability |
| 10 | a in | b to | c from | d of |
| 11 | a nervous | b anxious | c angry | d worried |
| 12 | a minds | b objects | c dislikes | d refuses |
| 13 | a recipe | b prescription | c review | d receipt |
| 14 | a take | b do | c make | d carry |
| 15 | a trust | b believe | c count | d confide |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Some spare time activities

Robert Burns, Scotland's greatest poet, (0) *was* born (16) 25th January, 1759. (17) an early age he had to help his father on his farm as well as attend lessons given by a teacher who was employed by his father and a (18) neighbours.

When he was twenty-two, he (19) to Irvine, where he began to learn about making cloth. Shortly after (20) arrival, the factory in which he was training was destroyed by fire so he started a farm with his younger brother Gilbert.

While he (21) living on the farm, he concentrated (22) writing poems and fell (23) a local girl, Jean Armour. Robert wanted to marry her but her father (24) not allow him to do so, probably because he thought Burns was not wealthy enough. Her father's refusal took Robert (25) surprise and since he could not (26) used to the idea of being unable to marry her, he decided to leave the country. (27) very little money, Robert had to obtain the fare for the voyage by selling some poems. Just as he was about to leave he was given (28) advice – to publish a new edition of the poems he (29) written. He received a large sum of money for the poetry and was able to get married to Jean Armour. During his marriage he continued to write the expressive poetry he became famous (30) Robert Burns died in 1796 from rheumatic fever.

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: Have you been invited to John's party?

invitation

Has John given you an invitation to his party?

31 We can be sure that Jane will help at the party.

count

We can help at the party.

32 He doesn't intend to stay for very long.

going

He very soon.

33 The house was completely empty.

furniture

There the house.

34 I'm sure they were asleep during the burglary.

must

They during the burglary.

35 I don't remember him behaving violently in the past.

use

He a violent person.

36 My dentist advised me to reduce the amount of chocolate I ate.

advice

My down on chocolate.

37 When we got to Dover, the ferry wasn't there.

already

The ferry the time we got to Dover.

38 Whenever he visited us he brought flowers.

would

He bringing flowers.

39 Ingrid and Astrid have had many arguments in the past.

fallen

It's not the first time Ingrid Astrid.

40 You need to be courageous and determined in order to be a good soldier.

calls

Being a good soldier and determination.

D For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Puppy saves lion cub

0	Sometimes, just as human beings do, animals reject their ✓
00	young at <u>the</u> birth. This recently occurred at Dudley Zoo	..... the
41	in England. The animal involved was an Asiatic lion cub which	.....
42	called Sam. Sam's mother, Gir, would have to nothing	.....
43	to do with the cub so its future looked black. When staff	.....
44	at the zoo saw what had been happened, they decided to	.....
45	telephone to the director's wife, whose dog had given	.....
46	birth to four Japanese Akita puppies about six weeks	.....
47	earlier. While realising how important it was for her to act	.....
48	quickly, she took the one of the puppies, Koneka, to the	.....
49	zoo. Fortunately, the two animals took on to each other	.....
50	immediately. Sam and Koneka are now used to be sharing food	.....
51	and a bed. The cub has made a very good progress. It	.....
52	will stay with Koneka for another four months. Then	.....
53	Sam will be moved to a bigger zoo as part of a	.....
54	programme to preserve his species. Asiatic lions were used to	.....
55	be quite common but now there are existing only four	.....
	hundred worldwide.	

E For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Bringing families closer

In the past few years, extreme sports have (0) *greatly* increased in popularity. The people who have taken up (56) activities like bungee jumping say they get no (57) from traditional sports or (58) and their boring daily routine does not (59) them to live life to the full.

**GREAT
DANGER
SATISFY
ATHLETE
ABLE**

Nowadays, (60) in America, there are competitions in which those people (61) enough to face the challenge of these (62) new activities can win large cash prizes. This has resulted in the (63) of a whole new industry which (64) in making equipment and clothing for extreme games. Often the (65) that certain games have become commercial causes other people to come up with even more extreme sports and the cycle is repeated.

**SPECIAL
COURAGE
REVOLUTION
CREATE
SPECIAL
DISCOVER**

Practice Test 4

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Take care, it's a jungle out there

The (0) of young children playing happily in the garden is a joy to behold and, since an Englishman's home is his castle, it is widely regarded that they can come to no (1) there. However, if asked about possible dangers, parents will admit that children could be stung by a (2) of bees or (3) themselves on the rosebushes, but these are not (4) occurrences. In most people's (5) , being (6) home means staying safe.

Unfortunately, the (7) points to quite a different story. About four thousand British toddlers, some of (8) have to spend time in hospital because their (9) is considered serious, are poisoned by plants each year. In order to combat this danger, there should be a (10) awareness of which plants are seriously poisonous. Very often the flowers that are the most attractive are the most lethal, but it's no (11) trying to get this (12) to a small child because tasting flowers is quite natural. After all, the child is simply exploring.

It is clear that safety in the garden depends on parents paying close (13) to what their children are doing. When they are quiet, it often means they are (14) up to something and require supervision. Although medical science in this day and (15) is likely to prevent a fatality, leaving children unattended in the garden is too big a risk to take.

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 0 | a sight | b scenery | c view | d vision |
| 1 | a injury | b harm | c damage | d hurt |
| 2 | a swarm | b pack | c flock | d shoal |
| 3 | a sprain | b scratch | c scar | d bruise |
| 4 | a common | b conventional | c often | d usual |
| 5 | a approval | b attitude | c opinion | d statement |
| 6 | a to | b in | c at | d inside |
| 7 | a fact | b proof | c testimony | d evidence |
| 8 | a whom | b them | c whose | d which |
| 9 | a position | b condition | c situation | d location |
| 10 | a general | b straightforward | c typical | d usual |
| 11 | a worth | b point | c use | d problem |
| 12 | a back | b over | c into | d across |
| 13 | a notice | b attention | c attendance | d care |
| 14 | a going | b getting | c staying | d breaking |
| 15 | a time | b term | c age | d period |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A man with a vision

Stamford Raffles was born aboard a ship off the coast of Jamaica (0) *in* 1781. Instead (16) attending university, he worked for the East India Company (17) a clerk and studied hard in his spare (18) At the age of thirty, he became lieutenant governor of Java, (19) he employed zoologists and botanists (20) discover all they could about the animals and plants on the islands. Raffles himself acquired a large collection of animals, including a Malayan sun bear that was brought (21) with his children. The bear often joined Raffles for dinner, (22) fruit and drinking champagne.

On a trip to Europe in 1817, Raffles visited a scientific institution for the study of plants and animals. It was this visit (23) gave him the idea for the forming of a collection of living animals. (24) founding the colony of Singapore in 1819, Raffles (25) together with several influential scientists and aristocrats (26) listened carefully to the ideas he so strongly believed (27) Raffles (28) in convincing these people that his ideas were sound and they voted him president of the Zoological Society of London. Raffles died suddenly from a stroke in 1826. Sadly, the man (29) idea it was to start London Zoo did not see its opening two years (30) , in 1828.

C

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: You *mustn't* use a calculator in the test.

allowed

You aren't allowed to use a calculator in the test.

31 I'm still waiting for her decision.

decided

She to do yet.

32 You are not allowed to take these documents out of the library.

remain

These documents the library.

33 There weren't many apples on the tree.

few

There on the tree.

34 I've only got a little luggage so I don't need a trolley.

much

I luggage, so I don't need a trolley.

35 They are going to demolish the old shoe factory next month.

pulled

The old shoe factory is next month.

36 I am sure he has told her my secret.

must

He my secret.

37 There were only a few people at the party.

many

There at the party.

38 Some of the paintings are still for sale.

been

Some of the paintings yet.

39 He bought me a computer because I wanted to work at home.

so

He bought me a computer work at home.

40 The goods cannot leave the factory unless there is a signature on these papers.

signed

These papers the goods can leave the factory.

D

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Teenagers' spending habits

- | | | |
|----|---|------------------|
| 0 | It is a well-known fact that teenagers today have | ✓ |
| 00 | greater spending power than they <u>got</u> used to have. | <u>got</u> |
| 41 | It is also known that they have more things to | ..... |
| 42 | spend their money on so they get out through it | ..... |
| 43 | faster. Parents normally give to their children pocket | ..... |
| 44 | money at the weekend so most of them go for | ..... |
| 45 | shopping on Saturday. Among the things that they do | ..... |
| 46 | usually buy are CDs, computer games and clothes. If | ..... |
| 47 | they have any of money left, they go to the cinema or | ..... |
| 48 | a cafeteria. By the time they go back to school or college on | ..... |
| 49 | Monday, very few of them have anything left. This | ..... |
| 50 | obviously means that the teenagers who they save | ..... |
| 51 | money are in the minority. It seems the more the money they | ..... |
| 52 | get, the faster they spend it. Nowadays another one common | ..... |
| 53 | trend is teenagers with credit cards. It is not being unusual | ..... |
| 54 | to see them to spend large sums of money on clothes | ..... |
| 55 | which they are then paid for by their parents. | ..... |

E

For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A holiday on Mauritius

With holiday resorts getting more and more (0) *crowded*, the idea of spending a holiday in an (56) luxury hotel next to (57) sandy beaches is becoming more and more attractive.

Mauritius, an almost (58) island about 600 miles from the East African coast, can provide a very (59) location for just such a holiday. The island, probably most (60) for its rare stamps, has little tourism, so (61) today can enjoy its unspoilt scenery. There are few sights on the island but (62) is never a problem since local tourist organisations offer (63) fishing and sailing trips to (64) areas of breathtaking natural beauty. Mauritius is guaranteed to leave the holidaymaker (65) relaxed.

CROWD
ISOLATE
END

CIRCLE
PLEASE
FAME
VISIT

BORE
EXCITE
HIDE
COMPLETE

Adjectives & Adverbs, Comparatives & Superlatives, Adverbs of Frequency, Prepositions of Time & Place

Adjectives & Adverbs

Form	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjectives describe nouns. Adjectives in English have the same form for singular and plural. 	<i>clever boy clever boys</i> <i>rich man rich men</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> We add -ly to an adjective to form the adverb. 	<i>He is a slow reader. He reads slowly.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some adverbs such as <i>deep, early, fast, hard, high, late, much, near, short, wrong</i>, etc have the same form as adjectives. 	<i>He is a fast learner. He learns fast.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some of these adverbs also have an -ly form, but the meaning is different. <i>lately = recently</i> <i>nearly = almost</i> <i>deeply = very</i> <i>hardly = scarcely, almost not</i> 	<i>Have you seen your grandmother lately?</i> <i>I'm coming; I'm nearly ready.</i> <i>I was deeply moved by the film.</i> <i>Mike hardly ever goes out.</i>

1 Complete the table with the correct adverbs.

Adjectives	Adverbs
1 quick	<i>quickly</i>
2 fortunate
3 hard
4 noisy
5 happy
6 busy
7 scientific
8 comfortable
9 extreme
10 fast

2 Complete the table with the comparative and superlative form of the adjectives.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
fast	<i>faster</i>	<i>the fastest</i>
wonderful
happy
silly
good
bad
attractive
wide

Comparatives & Superlatives

Form	Examples		
■ We add <i>-er/-est</i> to adjectives and adverbs with one or two syllables.	tall clever	taller cleverer	tallest cleverest
■ The last consonant is doubled for one syllable adjectives/adverbs with consonant - vowel - consonant.	hot	hotter	hottest
■ For one or two syllable adjectives/adverbs that end in <i>-y</i> , the <i>y</i> changes to <i>i</i> and then we add <i>-er/-est</i> .	happy	happier	happiest
■ We use <i>more/most</i> or <i>less/least</i> with adjectives/adverbs of more than two syllables.	expensive demanding	more expensive less demanding	most expensive least demanding
■ Some adjectives/adverbs are irregular and the comparative and superlative forms must be learnt.	a lot of bad/badly far good/well ill little many/much old	more worse farther/further better worse smaller/less more older/elder	most worst farthest/furthest best worst smallest/least most oldest/eldest
■ We use <i>than</i> with the comparative when two people, groups, places or things are compared.	My brother is taller than me. Your car was more expensive than mine.		

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 You should be more *carefully* / *careful* with your work.
- 2 His foot sank *deeply* / *deep* into the mud.
- 3 I haven't been to the cinema *late* / *lately*.
- 4 Our teacher was in a very *bad* / *badly* mood today.
- 5 Sally types very *fastly* / *fast*.



4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

successful heavy carefully good prettily heavily careful
angry fluently rarely difficult hardly hard fluent angrily

- 1 Sarah couldn't do the exercise because it was very *difficult*
- 2 The little girls are always dressed.
- 3 She ever goes out at night.
- 4 John is such a student.
- 5 Dad works so that we see him.
- 6 Mum drives She is a driver.
- 7 I speak English I am in English.
- 8 John is a smoker. He smokes
- 9 Our boss was very today. He shouted at us
- 10 My father is a lawyer.

5 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- 1 Last night, I went to a rock concert. It was one of the *best* (good) concerts I have ever been to.
- 2 Living in the country is (healthy) than living in a city.
- 3 Economy Class is (comfortable) than Business Class.
- 4 Learning Chinese is (difficult) than learning English.
- 5 Mrs Hamilton is (strict) teacher in our school.
- 6 John is much (naughty) than Peter.
- 7 This is (delicious) food that I've ever eaten.
- 8 Tom is (careful) than John. John always makes mistakes.
- 9 Another person got the job because he was much (experienced) than me.
- 10 That was (bad) film I've ever watched.
- 11 It's (silly) thing I've ever heard. How could you say something like that?
- 12 Today is (warm) than yesterday, but tomorrow will be (cold) than today.

6 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the examples.

Tom / be / tall / Mary
Tom is taller than Mary.

Jim / be / tall / boy / the class
Jim is the tallest boy in the class.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I / run / fast / you
..... | 6 Tony / be / naughty / boy / our class
..... |
| 2 Gold / be / expensive / silver
..... | 7 This / be / good / restaurant / the city.
..... |
| 3 James / drive / carefully / his brother
..... | 8 Jerry / be / clever / Tom
..... |
| 4 The North Pole / cold / place / the world
..... | 9 Tim / like / me / much / John
..... |
| 5 She / be / bad / singer / the school
..... | 10 The Olympics / be / important sports event
..... |

Other Comparative Structures

Form	Examples
(not) as + adjective + as	The Indian elephant is not as big as the African elephant.
(not) as + adverb + as	He doesn't work as hard as I do. Jane plays tennis as well as I do.
the + comparative, the + comparative	The more you practise, the better you will get. The longer she waited, the angrier she became.

7 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

I study more than my brother.
My brother *doesn't study as much as I do.*

- Jill can walk faster than Mary.
Mary can't
- My mother works harder than my father.
My father doesn't
- Flying to New York takes more time than flying to Madrid.
Flying to Madrid doesn't
- You have visited more places in England than I have.
I haven't
- Shopping centres are more convenient than small shops.
Small shops aren't
- James can drive faster than Timothy can.
Timothy
- This film is more interesting than the last one we saw.
The last film we saw
- We expected the match to be better.
The match wasn't

8 Rewrite the sentences practising *the + comparative, the + comparative*.

- As she grew older, she became less patient.
The older she grew, the less patient she became.
- You are more likely to have an accident when you drive fast.
.....
- If you work quickly, you'll be able to leave sooner.
.....
- As he went further into the forest, he became more frightened.
.....
- As I learnt more about the subject, it seemed to be more interesting.
.....

9 Choose the correct word or phrase.

- This is the *most easy* / easiest test I've ever done.
- In fact, the test wasn't as *harder* / *hard* as I expected.
- Al Pacino is one of the *more talented* / *most talented* actors of his generation.
- Antonio can't speak English as *good* / *well* as Philip.
- Our flight to Madrid took *the longest* / *longer* than we expected.
- 'How are you today?' 'Well, I feel *more bad* / *worse* than yesterday.'
- The Empire State Building was once the *taller* / *tallest* building in the world.
- He didn't answer the questions as *quickly* / *quick* as I did.

10 Complete the sentences by writing one word in each space.

- 1 My sister doesn't cook *as* well as I do. In other words, I am much better *than* her.
- 2 You can't walk fast I can.
- 3 John is youngest boy in the class.
- 4 Jane thinks she is cleverer me.
- 5 The bigger your house is, the more furniture you need.
- 6 The test was less difficult I expected.
- 7 He was best pianist of his generation.
- 8 The film 'The Beach' wasn't successful 'Titanic'.

11 Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the words in brackets.

- 1 He is *the worst* (bad) student in the class.
- 2 Our trip to Paris took (long) we expected.
- 3 This suit is (expensive) one of all.
- 4 My old bed was (comfortable) my new one.
- 5 Jonathan is (intelligent) student that I've ever had.
- 6 He is (dangerous) criminal in the world.
- 7 Driving in a village isn't (dangerous) driving in a city.
- 8 Tom isn't (well-prepared) for the exam I am.

12 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

I've never eaten such a delicious meal before.
It's the most delicious meal I've ever eaten.

- 1 Martha has never been to a more beautiful place before.
It's the
- 2 I've never read a more interesting book before.
It's the
- 3 We've never seen such a good film before.
It's the
- 4 I've never tasted such delicious soup before.
It's the
- 5 I've never had such a terrible experience before.
It's the

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 Philip and Ray are the same height.
Philip *is as tall as* Ray.

TALL
- 2 Sirius is the brightest star of all.
Sirius any other star.

SHINES
- 3 This carpet cost a lot more than the other one.
This carpet the other one.

EXPENSIVE
- 4 Men usually die at a younger age than women.
Women usually men.

LIVE
- 5 Hank plays better than anyone I know.
I don't know anyone Hank.

AS
- 6 It doesn't rain as much in Greece as it does in England.
It rains it does in Greece.

OFTEN
- 7 Amsterdam is not nearly as far away as Tokyo.
Tokyo is Amsterdam.

MUCH
- 8 She weighs a bit less than she did as a teenager.
When she was a teenager, she was she is now.

SLIGHTLY

Adverbs of Frequency

Form	Examples
Adverbs of frequency (<i>never, seldom, rarely, hardly ever, occasionally, sometimes, (very) often, usually, frequently, always</i>) come before the main verb <u>except</u> when the main verb is to be .	<i>They never help me in the kitchen.</i> <i>Tom is sometimes bad-tempered in the morning.</i>
They come after the first auxiliary verb.	<i>I have often wondered what life was like in the distant past.</i> <i>Swans have never been seen here before in such large numbers.</i>

Rewrite the sentences with the adverb of frequency in the correct position.

- 1 She has done her best. (always)
She has always done her best.

.....
- 2 They are on time for work. (hardly ever)

.....
- 3 Brian has seen a polar bear. (never)

.....
- 4 Does she shout at you like that? (usually)

.....
- 5 I could have done it without your help. (never)

.....

Prepositions of Time

Prepositions of time show **when** something has happened, is happening or will happen.

Preposition	Use	Examples
at	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> exact time times of the day celebrations the weekend 	<p>The programme starts at three o'clock.</p> <p>We eat lunch at noon.</p> <p>We give presents at Christmas.</p> <p>We relax at the weekend.</p>
on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> days of the week dates celebrations with the word 'day'. 	<p>I go to the cinema on Fridays.</p> <p>It's his birthday on 21st August.</p> <p>We eat turkey on Christmas day.</p>
in	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> months years centuries seasons certain time periods 	<p>The exam is in July.</p> <p>They met in 1992.</p> <p>TV was invented in the twentieth century.</p> <p>She goes swimming in summer.</p> <p>I go swimming in the morning and to the gym in the afternoon.</p>

15 Complete the sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- The exam will finish**at**..... two o'clock.
- My birthday is March.
- It's Jennifer's birthday 28th July.
- What do you do New Year's day?
- Do you go skiing winter?
- I'll see you the morning.
- I'm having a party Sunday.
- The party finished midnight.
- I'm going swimming the weekend.
- I passed my driving test 2001.

16 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

Tony / wash / the car / Sundays

Tony washes the car on Sundays.

1 David / not go / to the gym / Mondays

2 Peter / play / tennis / the weekend

3 he / go / the beach / the holidays

4 she / visit / her friends / Christmas

5 I / go / to bed / late / night.

6 Harold and I / play cards / 10 o'clock / every day



Prepositions of Place

We use prepositions of place to show **where** someone or something is.

Preposition	Examples
at	He is at his sister's house.
behind	Don't hide behind that sofa.
between	The office is between the bank and the post office.
in	There's a fly in my soup.
in front of	The teacher is in front of the students.
near	Our house is near the supermarket.
next to	Stand next to me and hold my hand.
on	The plates are on the table.
opposite	He sat opposite her at dinner so that he could see her face.
under	Your slippers are under the bed.

Note: For countries and cities we use the preposition **in**.

I live **in** France.

Do you live **in** London?

For smaller locations, we use the preposition **at**.

They are **at** the cinema.

I live **at** 24 Upper Road.

He is **at** work now.

Here are some useful expressions with prepositions of place:

on	in	at
on the train/bus/plane	in bed	at school
on the right/left	in hospital	at work
on the wall	in a car	at home
	in the middle	at the top
		at the bottom

17 Complete the sentences with prepositions of place.

- I don't like it when a tall person sits *in front of* me at the cinema because I can't see anything.
- The sun went a cloud and suddenly it felt cold.
- I was squashed two large ladies in the lift.
- You have so many flowers your garden!
- My parents live us but I'd prefer it if they moved even closer.
- She's still the office at the moment. She usually leaves at 5 pm.
- Chess players sit each other.
- Sit me. I want to talk to you about something important.
- She sat the umbrella to protect her skin from the sun.
- There's too much cheese this pizza.

18 Complete the following sentences by writing a preposition in each space.

- There is a painting *on* the wall.
- My grandmother's hospital at the moment.
- She lived Paris for four years when she was much younger.
- There are many beautiful shells the bottom of the sea.
- Turn left and you'll see our house the right.
- She stood the middle of the room wondering if anyone would talk to her.
- He's the office. You can call him there.

14 VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: go

1 Use the word **go** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

along with	off (2)	on	with	after	through (2)
in for	down with	out	up	down	

- 1 I'll always *go along with* (agree to support) an employee who comes up with a good idea.
- 2 The alarm (started ringing) when somebody moved too close to the priceless painting.
- 3 Two students (continued) talking after they'd been asked to be quiet.
- 4 Mrs Jackson (suffered) a great deal of pain before her hip operation.
- 5 Almost half the staff has (become ill with) 'flu this week.
- 6 Since prices have (increased) fewer people have been able to afford a new car.
- 7 The lights (stopped shining) while I was reading.
- 8 Don't sign the papers until you've (examined) them carefully.
- 9 I only (entered) the competition because my cousin suggested it.
- 10 Those shoes (match) your dress perfectly.
- 11 It's no wonder the fish has (turned bad). You forgot to switch the fridge on after defrosting it.
- 12 One of the security guards (chased) a pickpocket who'd stolen a wallet from an elderly man.
- 13 I won't buy a new computer until prices (fall).

Phrasal verbs: mixed

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

face up to	feel like	feel up to	fill in	find out
grow on	grow up	hand in	hand out	hand over

- 1 Now that he's living on his own, he'll have to *face up to* (confront) his problems by himself.
- 2 We were asked to (complete) an application form before we could attend an interview.
- 3 She's still weak after her illness and doesn't (have the strength to manage) a long walk.
- 4 How did you (discover) who sent the note?
- 5 I (am in the mood for) a good workout in the gym. How about you?
- 6 I couldn't (submit) my homework on time because I'd hurt my wrist in a basketball match.
- 7 The thief was made to (give back) most of the things he'd stolen.
- 8 You may not like the village at first but I'm sure it will (become more likeable to) you in time.
- 9 Sheila was born in Kent but (spent her childhood and adolescence) in Wales.
- 10 Someone was (distributing) free samples of a new type of biscuit outside the supermarket.

Words easily confused

3

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	bring fetch take go carry	a I think I'll <i>take</i> the children on a picnic tomorrow. b We ordered fish and you've us lamb. c Could someone help me my luggage? d There's a first-aid kit in the car. Please it for me. e Paul's not here. He's to a doctor.
2	forbid avoid prevent block escape ban	a This device the engine from overheating. b How can I speaking to her when we work in the same office. c The headmaster accepted the pupil's explanation and she punishment. d They've been from the club for fighting. e Taking photographs in this area is strictly f The defender the shot and saved his team from defeat.
3	occur happen result cause lead	a What to your car? b You've already enough trouble so stop it! c Don't speak about her like that. She to be a friend of mine. d The heavy rain in floods. e It was your attitude towards Jack that to his decision to resign. f It suddenly to me that I had forgotten my passport.
4	increase rise expand extend	a Several shopkeepers have their prices. b His land well beyond the river. c Fertilizers are used to crop yields. d They're thinking of their business. e If the temperature any higher, turn on the air conditioning. f Gases when heated.
5	reach arrive get	a She at the party in a satin dress. b After an hour's walk, we the bridge. c The plane is due to in twenty minutes. d This train to Glasgow at three o'clock.
6	angle corner edge margin view	a Leave the bag in the next to the lamp. b Let's look at the problem from a different c Why does your point of always differ from mine? d Don't write in the because that's where the teacher makes her comments. e They stood at the water's and gazed at the sunset.

7	likely probably surely certainly possibly	a Don't worry. They're on their way here. b It's that Johnson will win the race. c I'm not going to lend him any more CDs! He can buy his own. d The longer you wait, the more she is to change her mind. e That's the worst song I've ever heard. f, you can't be serious!
---	---	--

8	absolutely really highly greatly	a Prices are cheap at that store. b It was a(n) brilliant film. c Being a(n) successful businessman, he is very wealthy. d We were relieved to hear that the children had been found safe and sound.
---	---	---

9	invent find out discover recover set up	a It was Henri Becquerel who radioactivity. b The police managed to most of the stolen property. c Can you when the bus leaves, please? d One type of telescope was by Sir William Herschel. e His grandfather the company sixty years ago.
---	---	---

10	sensible reasonable logical sensitive	a She wears sunglasses because her eyes are to light. b He's so that he gets upset when you criticise him. c Being so, Julie is in great demand as a babysitter. d I'm trying to be but they refuse to cooperate. e There's no explanation for this event. f The jury must return a 'not guilty' verdict if there is any doubt.
----	--	--

11	disappear vanish desert abandon mislay	a The weather was so bad that the navy had to the search for the missing sailors. b The soldier his post during the battle. c As the fog descended, the block of flats opposite slowly from view. d My glasses can't have into thin air! e I seem to have my pen. Have you seen it?
----	--	---

12	accurate precise exact	a This watch is to within five seconds a decade. b I had the printer make a(n) copy of an old poster which had been torn. c You said you left at about midnight. Can you be more, please?
----	------------------------------	---

Word formation

4 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Verb	Adjective
appreciation	appreciate	.....	.....	industrialise	.....
(dis)like/liking	.....	.....	influence	.....	.....
.....	.....	large	.....	-	shy
.....	.....	modern	.....	secure	.....
.....	(over)simplify	.....	infection	.....	.....
(im)purity	.....	.....	.....	.....	required
.....	.....	symbolic	.....	respond	.....
.....	.....	(un)identifiable	atmosphere	-	.....
.....	destroy	.....	.....	.....	(un)confirmed
.....	.....	punishable	.....	-	(in)sincere
.....	theorise	.....	.....	notice	.....
(un)suitability	.....	.....	.....	.....	embarrassed/-ing
.....	imagine	.....	.....	memorise/remember	.....
hesitation	.....	.....	.....	.....	payable

5 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- Our *consumption* of natural resources has risen to a dangerously high level. **CONSUME**
- That was a very decision. Well done. **SENSE**
- warming is causing ecologists great concern. **GLOBE**
- Giving the job to such an person was a recipe for disaster. **RESPONSIBLE**
- How are we going to the flower show? **PUBLIC**
- How Sally is! **WIT**
- She plays tennis **PROFESSION**
- You cannot order items worth more than £500 without the manager's **APPROVE**
- Don't your sister to do anything naughty. **COURAGE**
- Take your and get out now! **BELONG**

Preposition practice

6 Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

from (2) in of to with out in out of as at against

- She wrote him a letter saying that she was no longer *in* love *with* her fiancé.
- He regarded this her way telling him that she was fond him.
- He quickly replied her letter and invited her his house.
- Realising he had misunderstood her letter, she made him aware the fact that she was going with someone else.
- He never got over the shock of this and now suffers a lack of self-confidence.
- He is still hospital but least his condition has improved and he is danger.
- It's the first time she's been seen public since her divorce.
- They are sale half price in my local supermarket.
- You can never depend Oliver.
- I warned them surfing in this area but they took no notice me.
- How dare you shout your mother!
- There were cars every type at the exhibition.

15 THE PASSIVE

Passive Voice, Personal & Impersonal Construction, Make/Let/Be Allowed To

The Passive Voice

The Passive is formed using the verb **to be** + the **past participle** of the main verb.

The object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence.

Shakespeare wrote Hamlet.

Hamlet **was written** by Shakespeare.

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ We use the passive to put emphasis on the action itself rather than the person who did it. ■ In a passive sentence, we use the word <i>by</i> to introduce the person who did the action (the agent). ■ It is necessary to mention the agent when the person who did it is obvious or the person who did it is not known or important in the sentence. 	<p><i>My house was burgled yesterday.</i></p> <p><i>Our proposal for another school excursion was rejected by the school headmaster.</i></p> <p><i>Two football fans were arrested yesterday.</i> <i>My wallet was stolen yesterday.</i></p>

The Active and the Passive Voice

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	He supports me.	I am supported.
Present Continuous	He is supporting me.	I am being supported.
Past Simple	He supported me.	I was supported.
Past Continuous	He was supporting me.	I was being supported.
Present Perfect Simple	He has supported me.	I have been supported.
Past Perfect Simple	He had supported me.	I had been supported.
Future Simple	He will support me.	I will be supported.
Going to	He is going to support me.	I am going to be supported.
Future Perfect Simple	He will have supported me.	I will have been supported.

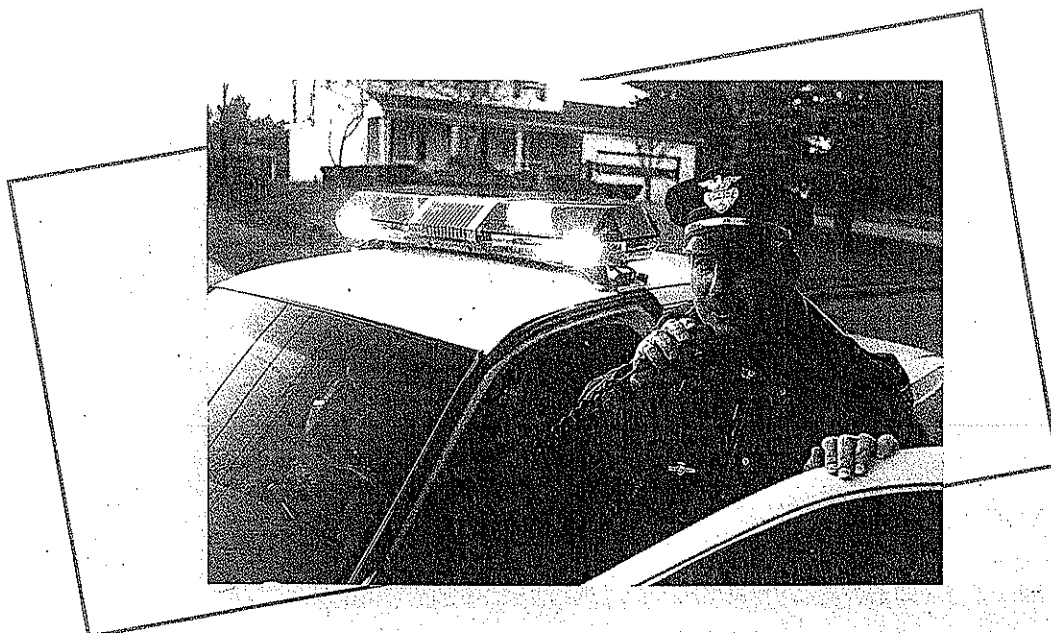
Note: We don't use the passive with the Present Perfect Continuous, the Past Perfect Continuous, the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect Continuous.

1 Put the sentences into the passive.

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	They build a house.	1 A house <i>is built</i>
Present Continuous	They are building a house.	2 A house
Past Simple	They built a house.	3 A house
Past Continuous	They were building a house.	4 A house
Present Perfect Simple	They have built a house.	5 A house
Past Perfect Simple	They had built a house.	6 A house
Future Simple	They will build a house.	7 A house
Going to	They are going to build a house.	8 A house
Future Perfect Simple	They will have built a house.	9 A house

2 Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 My car is *been* / *being* serviced at the moment.
- 2 Two young men were *killing* / *killed* yesterday in a car accident.
- 3 My father is going to be *promoted* / *promote* next week.
- 4 He has never *be* / *been* suspected of theft before.
- 5 Our teacher will be *taught* / *have been teaching* for twenty-five years when she retires.
- 6 Two football fans were *arrested* / *arresting* yesterday.
- 7 A window was *broke* / *broken* at school yesterday and I was *accusing* / *accused* of doing it.
- 8 Our mail is *delivering* / *delivered* to our doorstep every day.
- 9 Smoking *doesn't* / *isn't* allowed in hospitals.
- 10 The boy was *took* / *taken* to the hospital immediately after the accident.
- 11 My house is *decorating* / *being decorated* at the moment.
- 12 Our new car was *stolen* / *stealing* yesterday.
- 13 She *gave* / *was given* permission to take a day off by her boss.
- 14 Samantha *brought* / *was brought* her friend to our house yesterday.
- 15 The police *haven't arrested* / *haven't been arrested* the criminal yet.



3 Find the mistakes and correct the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 He hasn't be told the truth yet.
<i>He hasn't been told the truth yet.</i> | 7 He didn't introduced to her mother. |
| 2 Samantha wasn't inviting to the party. | 8 The meal is been prepared at the moment. |
| 3 The snacks were all ate yesterday. | 9 The dog will been fed tomorrow. |
| 4 This book was wrote by a famous author. | 10 Our house was build ten years ago. |
| 5 The invitations will delivered to you on time. | 11 He had be lent some money by his father. |
| 6 These cameras are make by a Dutch firm. | 12 The tests haven't corrected yet. |

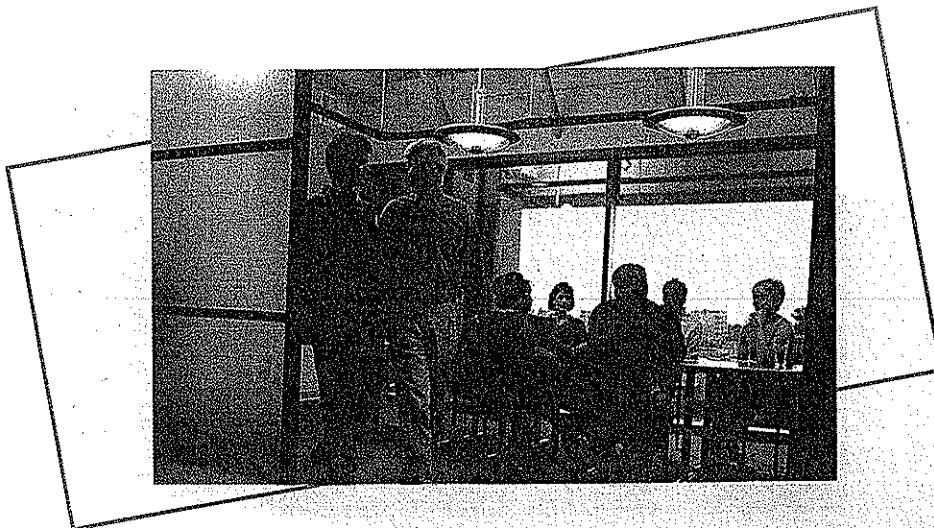
4 Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the correct tense, active or passive voice.

- 1 A postcard *was sent* (send) to me yesterday.
- 2 Sam (not invite) me to his party last Saturday.
- 3 A gift (deliver) to him by post.
- 4 'He (paint) his bedroom at the moment. He can't speak to you.'
- 5 This dress can't (wash) by hand. It should (take) to the dry cleaner's.
- 6 They (bring) their children up in France, but now they live in Italy.
- 7 Your watch can't (repair). You should (buy) a new one.
- 8 Your letter (not post) yet.
- 9 Our cat (run over) by a lorry yesterday.
- 10 The book has to (return) next week.
- 11 He (not introduce) to her mother yet.
- 12 These documents shouldn't (read) by anyone else.
- 13 The thief (arrest) very soon.
- 14 He (already pay) a lot of money by the Browns to repair the roof.
- 15 By the time you come back, dinner (cook).
- 16 The parcel (not deliver) until next Tuesday.
- 17 Germany is an industrial country. A lot of cars (manufacture) there.
- 18 She (not return) my keys to me yet.
- 19 Passengers (require) to fasten their seatbelts.
- 20 Their house (search) by the police yesterday.
- 21 People (not permit) to park here.
- 22 My car (service) by the mechanic at the moment.
- 23 Last night's plane crash (come about) due to poor visibility.
- 24 The fire (extinguish) by the residents before the fire brigade arrived.
- 25 When he fell off the slide, he (catch) by his mother.

Belinda painted the room white last week.

The room was painted white last week by Belinda.

- 1 My father has just bought a new car.
.....
- 2 They are building a new sports centre in the city.
.....
- 3 They are going to publish John's poems.
.....
- 4 Somebody has taken the money from the safe.
.....
- 5 The postman hasn't delivered the parcel yet.
.....
- 6 The postman isn't going to deliver the mail tomorrow.
.....
- 7 She gave him a birthday present.
.....
- 8 The police are investigating the murder of an old man.
.....
- 9 Someone has taken my calculator without my permission.
.....
- 10 He had eaten all the cake by the time we arrived.
.....
- 11 They have already reported the theft to the police.
.....
- 12 They postponed the meeting until next Friday.
.....
- 13 They will express their views in the next meeting.
.....
- 14 He took over the company when his father died.
.....
- 15 I will never forgive you for your dishonest behaviour.
.....
- 16 The company employed 3,000 new workers last year.
.....



6

Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

The milkman brings the milk to my door every day.

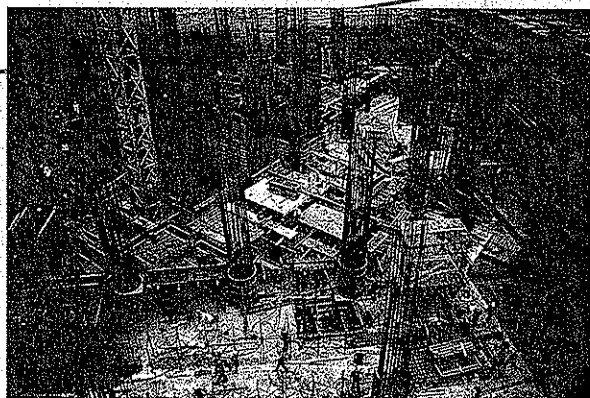
The milk *is brought to my door every day.*

- 1 Someone left this schoolbag in the classroom yesterday.
This schoolbag
- 2 They are constructing a new motorway in our city at the moment.
A new motorway
- 3 No one has ever accused me of lying before.
I
- 4 Jason had already eaten all the food when I arrived.
All the food
- 5 She will never invite Tom to her party again.
Tom
- 6 An ambulance took the injured man to hospital.
The injured man
- 7 We will provide the homeless with a place to live.
The homeless
- 8 They had never signed a contract before.
A contract
- 9 The mayor is going to announce the results of the contest.
The results of
- 10 They are building a new hospital in this area.
A new hospital

7

Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the correct tense in the passive.

- 1 By the time the truth came out, the scandal *had been forgotten* (forget).
- 2 The examination papers (mark) at the moment.
- 3 The original film (make) in black and white.
- 4 Four people (injure) in the crash.
- 5 The votes (count) when I left the meeting so I can't tell you the result.
- 6 The animals' cages (clean) every morning.
- 7 The winner (announce) when the votes have been counted.
- 8 Murphy (not give) many chances to play in the first team recently.



8

Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

They told you to be here at ten.

You were told to be here at ten.

BE

- 1 They are investigating the case at the moment.
The case at the moment. IS
- 2 They have just redecorated their room.
Their room redecorated. BEEN
- 3 They are pulling down that old cinema.
That old cinema down. IS
- 4 They brought their children up in Italy.
Their children in Italy. WERE
- 5 Our teacher has never shouted at anybody.
Nobody by our teacher. HAS
- 6 The examiner will read the instructions before the test.
The instructions examiner before the test. BE
- 7 They grow rice in China.
Rice in China. GROWN
- 8 He gave her a ring for her birthday.
She for her birthday. WAS
- 9 Two men robbed our house yesterday.
Our two men yesterday. BY
- 10 The rain spoilt our picnic yesterday.
Our picnic the rain yesterday. BY

9

Study the example and rewrite the sentences in the passive. At the same time replace part of the sentence with a phrasal verb.

The police are investigating the murder of John Black at present.

The murder of John Black ... *is being looked into* ... at present.

INTO

- 1 Penny took care of our child last night.
Our child by Penny last night. AFTER
- 2 His charming manner deceived me.
I his charming manner. TAKEN
- 3 They extinguished the fire with great effort.
The fire with great effort. OUT
- 4 They won't tolerate this noise any longer.
This noise won't any longer. PUT
- 5 They have cancelled our trip to Paris twice.
Our trip to Paris twice. CALLED

Modal Verbs in the Passive Voice

Active Voice		Passive Voice
can	keep	be kept
should	be keeping	-
ought to	have kept	have been kept
may	have been keeping	-
might		
must		
have to		

He must post this letter.	→	This letter must be posted .
They have to clean their house.	→	Their house has to be cleaned .
You should have told me about it.	→	I should have been told about it.

10 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

You shouldn't invite Peter to your party.

*Peter **shouldn't be invited** to your party.*

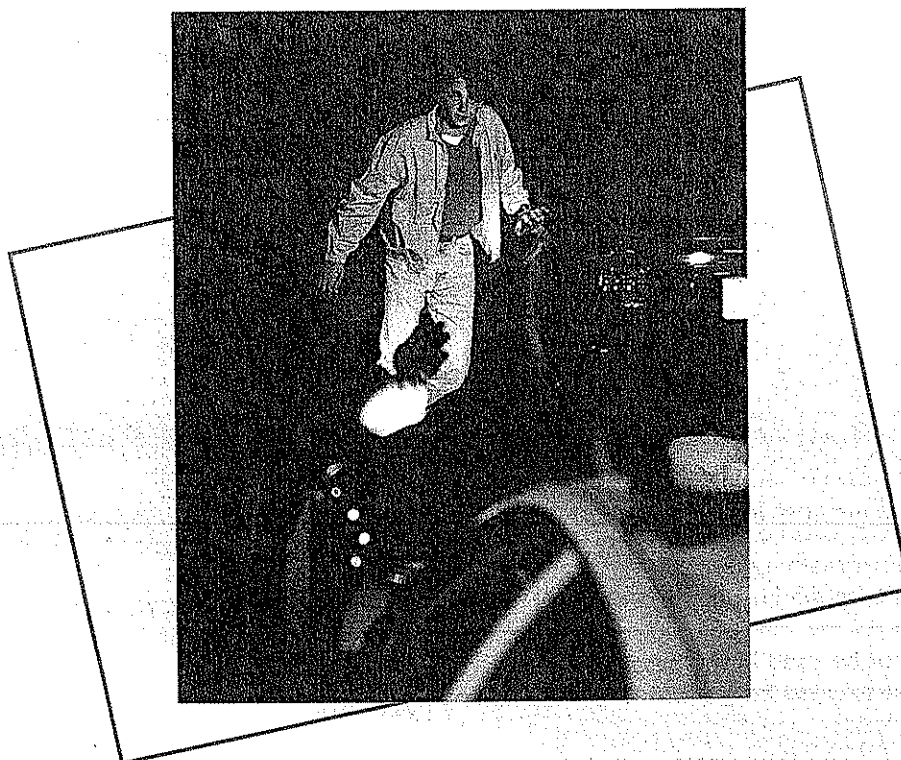
- 1 Pupils mustn't chew gum in the classroom.
Gum
- 2 He must deliver this parcel right away.
This
- 3 He can't have broken the vase.
The
- 4 We must wear formal clothes to the reception.
Formal clothes
- 5 She has to make all the preparations for the party.
All the preparations
- 6 We don't have to clean the bedroom now.
The bedroom
- 7 We should take the child to his parents' house.
The child
- 8 People can bring their pets to the hotel.
Pets
- 9 They ought to build a new school in our town.
A new school
- 10 He might have taken the book by mistake.
The book

Active Voice	Passive Voice
Perhaps the letter wasn't sent. I am sure she was dismissed I am sure the documents haven't been copied. He didn't complete the report.	The letter may not have been sent . She must have been dismissed . The documents can't have been copied . The report should have been completed .

II Study the table and rewrite the sentences.

I am sure she didn't give Frank his money back.
*Frank **can't have been given** his money back.*

- 1 I am sure he was arrested.
He
- 2 She didn't hand in her homework on time.
Her homework
- 3 Perhaps he took it by mistake.
It
- 4 I am sure our neighbour was disturbed by the loud music.
Our neighbour
- 5 I am certain Carol didn't reveal your secret.
Your secret
- 6 I am sure your guests admired your new kitchen.
Your new kitchen
- 7 Joan didn't complete her application on time.
Joan's application
- 8 Perhaps the money wasn't stolen after all.
The money



Personal & Impersonal Construction

Hope, consider, say, think, believe, report, expect, claim, know, etc can be used in the following passive structures:

Form	Examples
Personal Structure subject + passive verb + full infinitive	<i>He is said to be an excellent pianist.</i> <i>She is thought to be living in America.</i>
Impersonal Structure <i>It</i> + passive verb + <i>that</i> + clause	<i>It is said that he is an excellent pianist.</i> <i>It has been reported that she is living in America.</i>

12 Study the examples and rewrite the sentences.

They believe that smoking causes cancer.

a It *is believed* that smoking causes cancer.

b Smoking *is believed to cause* cancer.

1 They say that Emma plays the violin very well.

a It

b Emma

2 They expect that Jude Law will win the Oscar for Best Actor.

a It

b Jude Law

3 People know that he trains very hard.

a It

b He

13 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 They say she was responsible for the politician's resignation.

She *is said to have been responsible for the politician's resignation.*

2 People think that pirates hid a lot of treasure in the Caribbean.

Pirates

3 Experts think that the Japanese are interested in buying the company.

The Japanese

5 People say that the miners are ready to accept the new pay offer.

The miners

6 Historians know that they stole art treasures during the war.

They

Make / Let / Be allowed to

Active Voice	Passive Voice
make somebody do something <i>My parents made me stay in yesterday.</i>	be made to do something <i>I was made to stay in yesterday (by my parents).</i>
let somebody do something <i>My parents didn't let me go out.</i>	be allowed to do something <i>I wasn't allowed to go out yesterday.</i>

Note: Let cannot be used in the passive voice.

14 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the examples.

James / make / brother / cry / all the time

James makes his brother cry all the time.

Peter / make / go / bed / early / last night

Peter was made to go to bed early last night.

My mother / not let / me / go / party / yesterday

My mother didn't let me go to the party yesterday.

I / not / allowed / go / party / yesterday

I wasn't allowed to go to the party yesterday.

1 my mother / make / me / study / a lot / last night

2 last year, Mrs Smith / make / retire / because / she / be / sixty years old

3 our teacher / always make / us / stand / when / he / enter / classroom

4 the robbers / make / confess / yesterday

5 she / make / my sister / laugh / all the time

6 I / make / give up / smoking / last year

7 Penny / not / allowed / visit / friends / last weekend

8 our teacher / not let / us / go on / school trip / last Thursday

15 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

Mum doesn't let me watch TV after 10 pm.

I am not allowed to watch TV after 10 pm.

1 Mrs Johnson didn't let her daughter come home late.

Mrs Johnson's

2 My parents didn't let us go climbing last month.

We

3 The police didn't let the fans bring anything into the stadium.

The fans

4 Mr Brown made his son do his homework.

Mr Brown's

5 The police made him confess the truth.

He

6 They let us swim in the sea on our school trip.

We

7 Parents make their children eat healthy food.

Children

16 VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: mixed

1 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

hang around	hang back	hang on	hang onto	hang up	head off
hold back	hold on	hold up (2)	join in	join up	

- 1 Could you *hold on* (wait) a moment while I make a quick phone call, please?
- 2 When I rang to apologise for my mistake, she just (put the phone down) without saying a word.
- 3 Jack couldn't (keep control of) his anger any longer and he started shouting at everyone.
- 4 That's the third time the bank has been (robbed) this year.
- 5 When Alec was unemployed he used to (stand about aimlessly) outside the local café.
- 6 You should never (hesitate) when you're given such a wonderful opportunity.
- 7 I'm sorry I'm late. I got (delayed) in the heavy traffic.
- 8 (wait) while I get a pen to write down the message.
- 9 I'd rather (not part with) the painting until I find out how much it is worth.
- 10 The police managed to (stop) the robbers (getting away) by taking a short cut.
- 11 Don't just stand there. Go and (take part in) the fun.
- 12 Malcolm said he would (enlist in the army) if he couldn't find a job.

Phrasal verbs: keep

2 Use the word **keep** in the correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

back (2)	up	in	up with	on	down	off	at
----------	----	----	---------	----	------	-----	---------------

- 1 It's not easy to develop the skill you need in basketball. You'll just have to *keep at* (persevere with) it.
- 2 If it (doesn't stop) raining, the river will flood.
- 3 As the other students are making rapid progress, you won't be able to (maintain the same level as) them unless you work hard.
- 4 You've done well recently. (maintain) the good work.
- 5 (control the level of) your voice I can't concentrate on my work.
- 6 (Don't walk on) the grass.
- 7 Although the suspect seemed to be cooperative, the police knew he was (not revealing) something
- 8 Brian's parents are him (not allowing out) in the evenings until he promises to behave himself at school.
- 9 The firemen told us to (stay away) as there was danger from the burning building.

Phrasal verbs: let, look

3 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

let down let in on let up look after
look on look out look ~~up~~ to look into

- 1 Rob's younger brothers *look up to* (respect) him so he has to set a good example.
- 2 The recent disappearance of three valuable paintings is being (investigated) by police.
- 3 ! (Be careful!) Those books are going to fall off the shelf.
- 4 We (regard) you as one of the family. You're always welcome here.
- 5 I'm depending on you for support so don't (disappoint) me
- 6 According to the weather forecast, the rain won't (stop) until this evening.
- 7 As long as you promise not to tell anyone, I'll (tell) you a secret.
- 8 My cousin has kindly offered to (take care of) the children tonight.

Words easily confused

4 Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	observe notice watch see	a The zoologist spent days <i>observing</i> the behaviour of a pride of lions. b Can you the sea from the top of the hill. c It's such a small stain that no one will it. d I'd rather television than go out.
2	coast shore port resort seaside	a A day at the would make a pleasant change. b Cannes is a popular tourist c Navy vessels patrol the in search of smugglers. d Our boat sank but we were able to swim to the e Oil tankers are too big for this small
3	commentator reporter correspondent editor	a A(n) decides which articles are included in a newspaper. b He's worked as a war for the last ten years. c At the start of the football match, the predicted a win for Brazil. d The asked the president some tricky questions at the press conference.
4	talent skill qualification ability	a She has all the necessary for the job. b Even the world's best players have to practise their c I never doubted his to do the job. d Nowadays scouts watch children play football and try to sign them at a very young age.
5	vision view sight glance	a Just one at the patient was enough to prompt the doctor to call an ambulance. b Make sure we get a room with a sea c Stay out of until they've gone. d These glasses will improve your e We left the port, hoping to catch of at least one whale.

6	main significant major principal	a There hasn't been a earthquake here for years. b The entrance to the building is in High Street. c What was about the results of the experiment? d Our problem is financial.
7	soil land ground earth	a Sandy is no good for growing these flowers. b I found the bracelet lying on the outside. c Her family owns quite a lot of d What on are you doing?
8	crossing cruise passage expedition	a Going on a world sounds like fun. b Scott led a(n) to the North Pole. c The from the mainland to the island takes two hours. d Only the Red Cross workers were guaranteed safe through the war-torn country.
9	resident tenant neighbour inhabitant	a They don't own the flat. They're b I'm afraid parking is for only. c Our next-door have a party at least once a week. d The of this island have some very strange customs.
10	package inclusive thorough complete	a The watch cost £500, of VAT. b A(n) tour will definitely work out cheaper. c After making a(n) search of the building, the bomb disposal unit declared it safe. d It was a(n) waste of money.
11	include involve contain form consist hold	a My job travelling abroad quite frequently. b The price airport taxes and transfers. c Wood only a small part of the structure of these houses. d Nobody knew exactly what the box e The colouring set of twelve coloured pencils. f We need a tank that can at least ten gallons.
12	inner internal inland interior	a We'd better get an decorator to do the work. b His injuries are superficial and there's no bleeding. c The village is about ten miles , not on the coast. d There is a great deal of poverty in city areas.
13	celebrate hold perform carry out	a A soldier must orders without question. b They're their silver wedding anniversary. c The next meeting will be on 2nd March. d He enjoys magic tricks at children's birthday parties.
14	sale discount offer	a There's a(n) of 20% on all cameras this week. b It was a special ; that's why I only paid £10 for it. c Wait until the start before you go shopping for clothes.

Word formation

5

Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Verb	Adjective
height	.....	high	.....	.....	hot
.....	.....	laughable	.....	give	-
.....	criticise	.....	.....	see	-
.....	enthuse	.....	(in)dependence	.....	.....
.....	.....	grieving	.....	.....	dark
.....	.....	emphatic	.....	(mis)behave	.....
.....	sell	-	.....	.....	proven
.....	tell	-	.....	dramatise	.....
.....	complain	-	.....	.....	furnished
.....	.....	chosen	.....	be born	.....
.....	speak	speaking/spoken	.....	-	rude

6

Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- I've never met such a *greedy* person before. **GREED**
- Schulz is a famous **CARTOON**
- The psychologist said his behaviour was and that he needed therapy. **NATURE**
- According to an eyewitness, three men took part in the **ROB**
- Put down the and dial the number again. **RECEIVE**
- If I don't get a pay rise, I'll hand in my **RESIGN**
- My grandfather used to play with toys. **WOOD**
- Why did he react so when I mentioned my project? **AGGRESSION**
- Their views are totally different from mine. **POLITICS**
- Get , put your pyjamas on and go to bed. **DRESS**

Preposition practice

7

Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

- | | | | | | | | | |
|----|----|------|----|----|------|----|-----|------|
| by | in | into | at | to | with | on | for | from |
|----|----|------|----|----|------|----|-----|------|
- The crowd was staring *at* the building that was *on* fire.
 - I met him chance outside the library.
 - There's a good film television this evening.
 - After being involved a scandal, the president was asked to resign.
 - The company will provide you a special uniform.
 - Something strange happened me while I was waiting the bus.
 - Her novels have been translated English more than twenty foreign languages.
 - We entered the hall exactly the same time.
 - It's not worth appealing them help.
 - Amy is going to apply British Airways a job.

17

THE CAUSATIVE FORM

The causative is formed using **to have/get + object + past participle (+ by + agent)**

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To say that we arrange for somebody to do something for us ■ To talk about an unpleasant action that happens to somebody 	<p><i>I am having my hair cut next week.</i></p> <p><i>I had my car stolen yesterday.</i></p>

Note: Look at the difference in meaning in these two sentences.

*I **had** my car **cleaned**.* (I employed somebody to do it for me.)

*I **had cleaned** my car.* (I had cleaned it myself.)

Tense	Examples
Present Simple	<i>He has his car cleaned.</i>
Present Continuous	<i>He is having his car cleaned.</i>
Past Simple	<i>He had his car cleaned.</i>
Past Continuous	<i>He was having his car cleaned.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>He has had his car cleaned.</i>
Present Perfect Continuous	<i>He has been having his car cleaned.</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>He had had his car cleaned.</i>
Past Perfect Continuous	<i>He had been having his car cleaned.</i>
Future Simple	<i>He will have his car cleaned.</i>
Future Continuous	<i>He will be having his car cleaned.</i>
Future Perfect Simple	<i>He will have had his car cleaned.</i>
Modals	<i>He must have his car cleaned.</i>
Gerund	<i>He enjoys having his car cleaned.</i>
Infinitive	<i>He wants to have his car cleaned.</i>
Be going to	<i>He is going to have his car cleaned.</i>

Note: The negative and interrogative in the Present Simple and Past Simple are formed with *do/did*.

*He **doesn't have** his car **cleaned**.*

***Did he have** his car **cleaned**?*

We can use *get* instead of *have* in the same way in spoken English.

*He **will get** his car **cleaned**.*

***Will he get** his car **cleaned**?*

1 Write sentences using the causative form.

- 1 Your hair needs cutting. *I'll have it cut.*
- 2 Your car needs servicing.
- 3 Your room needs painting.
- 4 The carpet needs cleaning.
- 5 Your bike needs fixing.
- 6 Your watch needs mending.
- 7 Your tooth needs filling.
- 8 Your house needs redecorating.
- 9 This garden needs digging.
- 10 The grass need cutting.

2 Complete the sentences using the causative form.

- 1 Dad *had his car cleaned* (his car / clean) yesterday.
- 2 It is going to be a very hot summer. We must (air conditioning / put in).
- 3 It's three years since we last (the bedroom walls / paint).
- 4 I (my computer / fix) at the moment.
- 5 The inspector is going to (the whole house / search) for fingerprints.
- 6 I (already my eyes / test) by nine o'clock yesterday.
- 7 How often (your hair / cut)?
- 8 I have called a plumber. I (the tap / fix) before you arrive.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the causative form.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Someone stole my camera.
I <i>had my camera stolen.</i> | 7 They have already published three books of mine.
I have |
| 2 They are servicing my car.
I | 8 Mrs May got a plumber to fix the tap.
Mrs May |
| 3 Someone broke into my aunt's house.
My aunt | 9 Tom's mother washes his clothes.
Tom |
| 4 The hairdresser is going to cut my hair tomorrow.
I am | 10 Our floor needs polishing.
We must |
| 5 An electrician fixed the TV for Mary.
Mary | 11 He has serviced Dad's car.
Dad |
| 6 The dentist is filling one of my teeth.
I am | 12 They will deliver Carol's new fridge tomorrow.
Carol |

4 Complete the sentences using the causative form.

- 1 We *had our roof repaired* last week. (our roof, repair)
- 2 She yet. (not, her passport photo, take)
- 3 He at the moment. (his eyes, test)
- 4 They when I called in this morning. (the alarm, check)
- 5 Ray once a year. (his carpets, clean)
- 6 We once since we moved in. (the flat, redecorate)

Use of English Practice Tests 5 & 6

Practice Test 5

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Jailed birds and jailbirds

Although the therapeutic (0) of pets has been appreciated for some time, they have not been allowed in British prisons until relatively (1)

Not long ago it (2) to the prison authorities that prisoners serving long sentences must feel (3) by society and that was (4) the reason why they became less cooperative. It was then suggested that they were (5) to respond positively if they were allowed to keep a budgie. Realising that long-term prisoners (6) through a great deal of suffering, the appropriate government department went (7) with the idea.

After a trial period, the authorities (8) the conclusion that looking after a small, helpless bird brought out a (9) side in most prisoners. This, in turn, (10) some prisoners and their jailers closer together. The authorities were (11) relieved because there had been some opponents to the scheme who had passionately warned (12) it.

Since the scheme was (13), inmates have been able to (14) from the boredom of prison life and see their situation from a completely different (15)

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 0 | a price | b cost | c value | d worth |
| 1 | a lately | b recently | c shortly | d soon |
| 2 | a happened | b considered | c resulted | d occurred |
| 3 | a abandoned | b vanished | c mislaid | d left |
| 4 | a accurately | b truly | c precisely | d likely |
| 5 | a likely | b surely | c possibly | d certainly |
| 6 | a feel | b take | c face | d go |
| 7 | a through | b along | c down | d up |
| 8 | a came | b got | c arrived | d reached |
| 9 | a sensitive | b sensible | c logical | d truthful |
| 10 | a fetched | b took | c brought | d carried |
| 11 | a completely | b greatly | c highly | d absolutely |
| 12 | a from | b about | c for | d against |
| 13 | a discovered | b set up | c found out | d happened |
| 14 | a prevent | b avoid | c escape | d block |
| 15 | a corner | b edge | c angle | d opinion |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Gambling

In these days of high unemployment it might (0) *be* expected that people would try to save as (16) money as possible. However, the surprising fact is that people (17) gambling to putting money aside during an economic depression.

Gambling takes (18) forms and most people do it at one time or another. The majority usually bet small amounts on football matches, horse races, lotteries and scratch cards. They regard it (19) a kind of hobby which may improve the quality of their lives. Although they know very few (20) managed to do this, they are (21) hopeful that they will win a large sum of money that they (22) on betting. This group usually know when they are (23) to stop gambling so they can (24) least control the amount they spend.

There are, on the other hand, those who have (25) a strong desire to gamble that they take no notice (26) anyone who tries to stop them. As a result, they feel they (27) to bet to satisfy their addiction. These people will risk losing all their money without a second thought. In other words, they (28) rather lose their jobs or cause their marriage to break down (29) give (30) gambling.

C For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: It isn't necessary for you to go to every lesson.

attend

You don't have to/need to attend every lesson.

- 31 The president found what the manager said embarrassing.

embarrassed

The president comments.

- 32 Her brother didn't have nearly as much success in the job as she did.

more

She did the job her brother.

- 33 A famous architect is designing a house for them.

designed

They by a famous architect.

- 34 He started his stamp collection about twenty years ago.

collecting

He about twenty years.

- 35 You really shouldn't play on this court without permission.

supposed

You on this court without permission.

- 36 I'd rather work here than get a job in the city.

prefer

I a job in the city.

- 37 Tommy often forgets to switch on the alarm.

time

It's not the to switch on the alarm.

- 38 The combination of her green skirt and red jacket looked awful.

go

Her green skirt her red jacket at all.

- 39 She doesn't want you to study abroad.

rather

She study abroad.

- 40 You can buy two for the price of one at this shop.

sale

They are price at this shop.

D For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Giving a plant

- | | | |
|----|---|-------------|
| 0 | Since a plant is normally a very welcome present, many | ✓ |
| 00 | of us give one without thinking <u>more</u> carefully about | <u>more</u> |
| 41 | how difficult that it can be to look after it. Some | |
| 42 | people would rather not to have a plant because they | |
| 43 | spend such a long periods of time away from home | |
| 44 | that they are unable to take care of it properly. | |
| 45 | In these cases the owner has the problem of finding | |
| 46 | out someone responsible to look after the plant. | |
| 47 | There are also plants that need their special care. | |
| 48 | These normally die as soon as they will get too much | |
| 49 | sun or water. If the plant is kept on a balcony, it may | |
| 50 | attract so many insects. When this happens, it | |
| 51 | is often necessary to use a chemical spray – something | |
| 52 | which most people would prefer not to avoid. One | |
| 53 | further reason for not giving a plant just because of | |
| 54 | it is an easy choice is that some people cannot | |
| 55 | grow up anything, no matter how hard they try. | |

E For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Taking the blame

- (0) Pollution is now a sensitive political issue in many countries.
 As a result, one would assume that the amount of (56)
 waste being released is decreasing. However, there is no
 (57) that this is so. In fact, all the evidence
 shows that the (58) of our
 (59) environment is not slowing down at all. Many
 attempts have been made to (60) the reasons for this.
 Most of the time (61) government ministers and
 businessmen are accused of behaving (62) but putting
 the blame on these people is (63) a way of allowing the
 general public to maintain their (64) of products which
 damage the environment. If the public's (65) was more
 positive, perhaps the situation would change.

POLLUTE
 INDUSTRY

 CONFIRM
 DESTROY
 GLOBE
 IDENTITY
 INFLUENCE
 RESPONSIBLE
 SIMPLE
 CONSUME
 RESPOND

Practice Test 6

A

For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Modern tourism

Tourism has (0) in for a lot of criticism recently but has been unaffected by it and rightly so. One of the most common faults found with it is that (1) no longer broadens the mind. But why should it? (2) , the holidaymakers who choose to go on a (3) tour know just what such a holiday (4) This is what appeals (5) them so why shouldn't they go on this type of holiday? Travel writers generally (6) down on them because of their lack of adventure – 'all they want is a room with a sea (7) !' But what if they don't want broader minds? What if they choose these holiday (8) because their minds can't get any broader?

Another frequent criticism levelled at tourism concerns the changes (9) at holiday destinations: the (10) culture changes, (11) is developed, (12) roads are built and locals (13) for their guests. In other words, the tourist is provided (14) a copy of the place he or she has just left plus service. So why should there be any criticism? The world is changing rapidly and neither you nor I have the (15) to stop it. Just sit back and enjoy the ride!

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 0 | a come | b gone | c stayed | d been |
| 1 | a journey | b voyage | c travel | d expedition |
| 2 | a Really | b Probably | c Certainly | d Surely |
| 3 | a package | b guided | c parcel | d holiday |
| 4 | a involves | b forms | c consists | d holds |
| 5 | a from | b with | c for | d to |
| 6 | a see | b look | c let | d keep |
| 7 | a sight | b vision | c scene | d view |
| 8 | a resorts | b ports | c places | d shores |
| 9 | a watched | b viewed | c observed | d glanced |
| 10 | a tenants' | b dwellers' | c neighbours' | d inhabitants' |
| 11 | a land | b soil | c earth | d ground |
| 12 | a principal | b significant | c main | d chief |
| 13 | a carry out | b present | c celebrate | d perform |
| 14 | a for | b by | c from | d with |
| 15 | a ability | b qualification | c skill | d talent |

B

For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The other point of view

Very often a disagreement (0) *between* two friends, neighbours or colleagues can lead to a permanent problem. In order to avoid falling (16) with a friend or having a bad relationship with a neighbour or workmate, it (17) always (18) excellent idea to try to see the other person's point of view.

If you take into consideration how someone (19) thinks, your own thinking (20) improve, so you should write down the views your friend, neighbour or colleague is likely to have. Not only will their thoughts surprise you, but you may find a (21) to the problem as well.

Recently a friend of mine bought (22) new printer for her computer. The dealer in the shop had recommended it but she was let (23) when she found it was no better than her old one. (24) taking it back, she (25) a thought. She realised that if the dealer was criticised, he (26) be offended. So, instead of complaining, she said that she had (27) a mistake by not asking for (28) right printer. The dealer promptly changed it free of charge.

It was obvious to my friend that if she (29) not handled the problem in this way, the dealer would not have provided her (30) a free replacement.

C

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: Fix it now or it will get worse.

otherwise

You'd better fix it now, otherwise it will get worse.

31 Eating too quickly will give you a stomachache.

stop

You'll have a stomachache eating so quickly.

32 There's no need to shout.

voice

Please down.

33 Many people think that scientists have received signals from alien life forms.

thought

Scientists signals from alien life forms.

34 Taking care of four young children is difficult.

look

It isn't four young children.

35 I don't think they can complete the job by Friday.

might

They complete the job by Friday.

36 We enjoyed ourselves at the dance.

time

We at the dance.

37 What they need to do is form a new committee.

ought

They really up a new committee.

38 Be quiet and you can watch me repair the clock.

long

You can watch me repair the clock quiet.

39 Let me see your drawing.

look

Let me have you have drawn.

40 He drew cartoons before he began making films.

worked

He before he began making films.

D

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

A rich friend

- 0 Having been brought up in a relatively undesirable area, ✓
 00 I had very few friends who could have been then then
 41 described as anything but poor. This was meant that
 42 I was always impressed by the wealth and large houses.
 43 On one day I went to a folk music concert with
 44 some friends. There I met with a girl called Alison
 45 who invited several of us to her house for a cup
 46 of coffee. To my amazement, her house was very huge.
 47 It was located in a beautiful countryside and had
 48 two entrances at the front. There was also a garage
 49 big enough for three cars next to it. As soon as I entered into
 50 the house I saw some marvellous paintings hanging there
 51 on the wall. Alison explained that her father liked the
 52 art and often he bought paintings by famous artists.
 53 Although Alison came from a wealthy family, she
 54 never looked down on the people. It did not take
 55 long for us too to become friends and I was always
 made welcome at her house.

E

For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A stressful time

Probably the most (0) *confusing* time in a person's life is
 adolescence. It is a time when (56) that will affect a
 person's future have to be made. It is also when (57)
 becomes such an important issue. These two factors, together with the
 (58) that is placed on academic success, can make
 teenagers behave (59) when they are subject to
 (60) All too often adults regard
 those in their teens as being (61) and make continuous
 (62) about their attitude towards older people. Yet, if
 an adult under stress behaves (63) at any time, their
 (64), for example, may be excused because they are
 under pressure. People tend to lose (65) of the fact that
 adolescents are also under great pressure when they are criticised.

CONFUSE
 CHOOSE
 DEPEND

EMPHASISE
 AGGRESSION
 CRITICISE
 THINK
 COMPLAIN
 NATURE
 RUDE
 SEE

Full Infinitive, Bare Infinitive,
Gerund, Too/Enough

Full Infinitive (Infinitive With To)

Type	Active Voice		Passive Voice
Present	to give		to be given
Present Continuous	to be giving		-
Perfect	to have given		to have been given
Perfect Continuous	to have been giving		-
Use			Examples
■ To express purpose			He saved some money to buy a new car.
■ After certain verbs afford hope prove agree learn refuse appear manage remember arrange mean seem bother offer tend choose plan threaten decide prepare try fail pretend want forget promise would like			He didn't appear to like the idea. He decided to apply for the job. He pretended to be ill. He refused to tell me the truth. He didn't remember to post the letter. He doesn't seem to believe me. I didn't mean to hurt your feelings. I offered to carry the bags for him.
■ After certain verbs + object advise encourage persuade allow expect remind ask force tell command invite want convince order warn enable permit			I advised him to give up smoking. They didn't allow me to go out. She asked me to help her clean up. She encouraged him to try again. I expected you to say sorry. I persuaded him not to sell his house. She told me not to reveal her secret. She warned me not to be late again.
■ After certain adjectives fortunate, happy, likely, lucky, sorry			He is likely to pass the exams. I am sorry to have bothered you. She's lucky to have you as a friend.
■ Impersonal construction It + be + adjective (+ of + sb) It + be + adjective (for sb)			It was kind of you to help him. It was stupid of her to leave her car unlocked. It was generous of you to give the money. It is important for me to know the truth. It would be better for her to see a doctor. It is dangerous for children to go out after dark.

Full Infinitive (continued)

Use	Examples
■ After be + the only/the first/the best/the last/etc	He was the only man to survive the accident.
■ After questions words	He didn't know how to do the exercise. I told her which dress to buy . We haven't decided where to go on holiday yet.
■ After whether	She hasn't decided whether to accept his proposal or not.
■ After too and enough	He is too young to drive a car. He isn't old enough to drive a car.

Bare Infinitive (Infinitive Without To)

Use	Examples
■ After modals can, could, may, might, must, should	He may not have finished yet. You mustn't smoke in here. I would tell you if I knew about it.
■ After certain verbs/phrases had better / would rather make sb do sth (Note: Make is followed by the full infinitive when it is in the passive.) let sb do sth feel, hear, see, watch sb do sth	You had better consult a lawyer. I would rather stay in tonight. Our teacher makes us study a lot. Mum didn't let me go to the party. I heard him sing the whole song.
Note: Help is followed by either the full infinitive or the bare infinitive. She helped me (to) lift the box.	



1 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

Has he arrived?

He seems to have arrived.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Has he been working hard today?
He seems | 6 Didn't she call Mary?
She doesn't seem |
| 2 Did they buy a new car?
They seem | 7 Have they been drinking?
They seem |
| 3 Does your new teacher like you?
My new teacher seems | 8 Are they busy?
They seem |
| 4 Has the thief been arrested?
The thief seems | 9 Is he trying to hide something?
He seems |
| 5 Doesn't he know the answer?
He doesn't | 10 Has my car been damaged?
Your car seems |

2 Study the examples and use the appropriate infinitive type to transform the sentences in the exercise.

Perhaps she sleeps well every night.

She may sleep well every night.

Perhaps she is sleeping right now.

She may be sleeping right now.

Perhaps she slept well last night.

She may have slept well last night.

Perhaps she wasn't sleeping.

She may not have been sleeping.

Perhaps she has been sleeping.

She may have been sleeping.

- Perhaps she has told you all about it.
She may
- Perhaps Mrs Jones wasn't telling the truth.
Mrs Jones may
- I am not sure but I think he has forgotten our appointment.
He may
- Perhaps she was afraid of the consequences.
She may
- Perhaps she has been trying to cheat in the exams.
She may
- Perhaps Arthur hasn't finished decorating his room yet.
Arthur may
- Perhaps she doesn't speak Spanish.
She may
- Perhaps Jill is listening to music right now.
Jill may

3 Complete the sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form, active or passive.

- You can't *have invited* (invite) Sam to the party! He would have come.
- The house should (clean) almost every day.
- The letters should (post) by now. Why didn't you do it?
- Robert had better (go) on a diet right away. He is overweight.
- James refused (take part) in the competition.
- This house must (build) years ago.
- She agreed (cook) dinner for us.
- He could (injure) in the accident! He was so lucky.
- The journalist didn't want (reveal) the source of information.
- Our guests should (arrive) by now.

4 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

yesterday I / advise / Peter / see / a doctor immediately
Yesterday I advised Peter to see a doctor immediately.

- 1 it / be / impossible / me / meet / you right now
- 2 it / be / very kind / you / send / me / flowers / yesterday
- 3 it / be / cruel / him / hit / his dog
- 4 he / the only student / pass / the exam
- 5 it / be / really / dangerous / drive / when you / be / drunk
- 6 it / take / her / ages / get / over / her illness / last year
- 7 I offer / help / the old lady / cross the street
- 8 Sarah / always make / her son / eat a lot

Too/Enough

Use	Form	Examples
Too is used to indicate more than is necessary or wanted.	too + adjective/adverb + full infinitive	He is too young to drive.
Enough is used to indicate as much/many as is necessary or wanted.	adjective/adverb + enough + full infinitive	She is old enough to drive

Note: When joining two sentences with different subjects, we use **for** + object.

The bag is very heavy. You can't lift it.

The bag is too heavy **for you** to lift.

It is hot. We can go swimming.

It is hot enough **for us** to go swimming.

5 Study the table and then combine the two sentences into one using **too** or **enough**.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 My grandpa can't drive. He is very old.
<i>My grandpa is too old to drive.</i> | 8 That car is very expensive. I can't afford it. |
| 2 The sea is warm. You can swim. | 9 Mike isn't tall. He can't join the police force. |
| 3 The food is very cold. I can't eat it. | 10 This coffee is very sweet. I can't drink it. |
| 4 Sheila can't read. She is very young. | 11 I was very afraid. I couldn't open the door. |
| 5 She runs very fast. She can win a medal. | 12 He wasn't quick. He couldn't catch the ball. |
| 6 I was very angry. I couldn't talk to you. | 13 That exercise is very difficult. I can't do it. |
| 7 That house is very big. We can live in it. | 14 Jim isn't rich. He can't buy a new house. |

- 1 The policeman ordered the man *to lie down* (lie down).
- 2 You'd better (call) the police at once.
- 3 She is likely (pass) her exams. She has studied hard.
- 4 He wondered whether (invite) Joan to the party or not.
- 5 I really don't know which dress (buy).
- 6 The thief made the woman (give) him all her savings.
- 7 She was the first woman (step) on the moon.
- 8 He arranged (meet) Jennifer at the cinema.
- 9 Betty refused (lend) her brother the money he needed.
- 10 He proved (be) very bad at his job.
- 11 I would rather (have) spaghetti than sushi.
- 12 You seem (be) in a bad mood today. What's wrong?
- 13 The traffic warden didn't let me (park) outside the office.
- 14 It's really hard for me (decide) what (buy).
- 15 Please remind me (feed) the cat before we leave.

It is likely that he will pass his exams.

He is likely to pass his exams.....

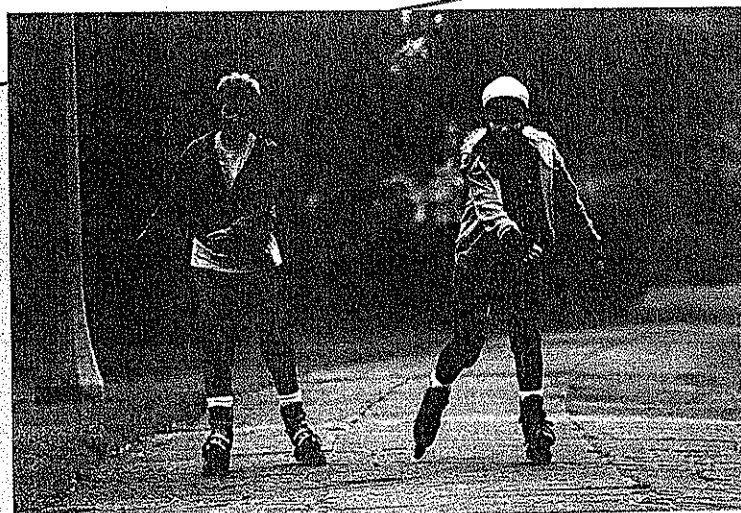
It appears that she has left.

...She appears to have left.....

- 1 It seems that he has accepted our proposal.
.....
- 2 It is likely that they will press charges against him.
.....
- 3 It appears that he has forgotten our appointment.
.....
- 4 It seems that your brother took your car without asking you first.
.....
- 5 It is likely that John will be expelled from school.
.....
- 6 It appears that she was trying to warn you.
.....
- 7 It seems that Sally has been lying about it all along.
.....
- 8 It is likely that my mother will be very angry when I get home.
.....
- 9 It appears that Mrs White has got married again.
.....
- 10 It is likely that my boss will resign next year.
.....

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence using the correct infinitive type.

- 1 This bike is very big, so Tom can't ride it.
This bike is *too big for Tom to ride*.
- 2 Jenny must tidy her room.
I want
- 3 'I don't think you should go on a diet, Tim.'
I advised
- 4 Mary gets angry very easily.
Mary tends
- 5 She is feeling much better now.
She seems
- 6 This skirt is very small, so she can't wear it any more.
This skirt is
- 7 Beatrice felt sleepy, so she didn't watch the end of the film.
Beatrice felt
- 8 It is likely that Julian will win the race again.
Julian is
- 9 There is a possibility that she will pass her driving test.
It is
- 10 My mother forces me to go to bed early every night.
My mother makes
- 11 My advice to you is to take a long holiday.
You had
- 12 The tea was so hot that I couldn't drink it.
The tea was too
- 13 You shouldn't have behaved like that; it was rude of you.
It was rude of
- 14 I don't have the money to buy this blouse.
I can't afford
- 15 I think you should revise before the test.
I advise



Gerund (-ing)

Type	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	keeping	being kept
Perfect	having kept	having been kept
Use		Examples
■ As the subject of a sentence		Smoking is harmful.
■ As the object of a sentence		I love cooking Italian food.
■ After certain verbs admit enjoy postpone appreciate fancy practise avoid finish recollect consider imagine remember delay keep resist deny mind stop dislike miss suggest		He admitted breaking the window. I don't remember meeting you before. The man denied taking part in the robbery. After their divorce, he avoided seeing her. She keeps complaining all the time.
■ After prepositions		They accused him of stealing the money. I am really tired of arguing again. They prevented us from seeing the patient. Tom isn't used to driving on the left. I have no objection to lending you the money.
■ After certain expressions can't stand there is/was no point in can't help spend/waste time it's no use be used to it's no good be accustomed to feel like be busy		It's no use crying now. I don't feel like eating out tonight. There is no point in apologising now. He spends most of his time watching TV. I am not used to getting up early.

9 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

It's difficult to learn Chinese.

Learning Chinese is difficult.

1 It's interesting to read science fiction books.

.....

2 It's important to have good friends.

.....

3 It's good to help poor people.

.....

4 It's enjoyable to go to fancy dress parties.

.....

5 It's illegal to drive without a driving licence.

.....

6 It's bad to tell lies.

.....

7 It is forbidden to smoke in public places.

.....

8 It is great to swim.

.....



Gerund or Full Infinitive

The following verbs can be followed by the gerund or the full infinitive but there is an important change in meaning.

Verb	Examples
remember	<i>Remember to buy</i> some bread on your way home. (not forget) <i>I don't remember buying</i> that dress. (recall)
stop	<i>Let's stop to ask</i> directions. (interrupt one action to do something else) <i>I think you should stop asking</i> silly questions. (not continue)
forget	<i>She forgot to call</i> me again. (not remember to do sth) <i>I'll never forget seeing</i> you for the first time. (not recall)
try	<i>He tried to answer</i> the question. (attempt) <i>If the food isn't tasty, try adding</i> some salt. (experiment)
regret	<i>I regret to inform</i> you that you have failed. (be sorry about sth about to be said) <i>I regret telling</i> those lies. (be sorry about sth you have done)
go on	<i>He told us about Jim and then went on to tell</i> us about Sally. (start a new action) <i>I went on telling</i> the story although he wasn't listening. (continue)
mean	<i>I didn't mean to offend</i> you. (intend) <i>If we invite her, it will mean offending</i> her ex-husband. (involve)

Note: Some verbs (**begin, continue, like, love, need, prefer, start**) can be followed by the gerund or the full infinitive with little or no change in meaning.

But, if the verb is in the continuous form, it is always followed by the full infinitive.

It started to rain/raining.

It was starting to rain.

10

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 It's no use talking / to talk to Mary; she won't listen to you.
- 2 You are so lucky to escape / to have escaped from the building during the earthquake.
- 3 It was so kind of you to take / taking me to hospital.
- 4 The notorious criminal admitted to plan / planning to assassinate the President.
- 5 The suspect denied knowing / to know anything about it.
- 6 Samantha couldn't afford going / to go on holiday this year.
- 7 You had better to hurry / hurry, or else you will miss the train.
- 8 Carol avoided driving / to drive in the rush hour when she lived in Paris.
- 9 My parents don't let me staying / stay up late during the week.
- 10 My secretary reminded me replying / to reply to a letter.
- 11 Mary suggested to go / going to the theatre.
- 12 My boss blamed me for to delay / delaying things all the time.
- 13 Al refused to lend / lending me the money.
- 14 I really don't know what do / to do tonight. I fancy to go / going to a restaurant but I can't afford it.
- 15 I can't remember to say / saying that to you.

- 1 Do you feel like *going* (go) out or would you rather *stay* (stay) in tonight?
- 2 I'd like (eat) in a Chinese restaurant for a change.
- 3 'Did you remember (lock) the door?'
'No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now.'
- 4 Don't forget (pick) me up at 6 pm from the airport.
- 5 My aunt is rich and can afford (go) to the Alps every winter.
- 6 She remembers (go) to school for the first time.
- 7 After (spend) two weeks alone, she looked forward to (see) us all.
- 8 She was the only one (arrive) at the meeting on time.
- 9 Jemima was too shy (make) a speech in public.
- 10 She pretended (be) sick in order to avoid (go) to school.
- 11 Don't worry! I don't mind (wait) for a while.
- 12 Did they manage (carry) the new bed upstairs?
- 13 My parents think that I am incapable of (earn) a living.
- 14 The chauffeur stopped (drive). He stopped (have) a rest.
- 15 I always enjoy (eat) out with friends.
- 16 If you agree (work) for me, I will offer you more money.
- 17 It's no use (ask) little children to be quiet. They can't help (make) a lot of noise when they are having a party.
- 18 Would you mind (sign) here, please?
- 19 Please, don't forget (pay) the phone bill.
- 20 I would rather (eat) chicken casserole than beans.
- 21 I am terribly sorry! I didn't mean (break) your antique vase.
- 22 John denied (take) the money.
- 23 Brenda suspected him of (take) money out of her purse.
- 24 It is very difficult (use) a computer unless you have attended a special course.
- 25 It's stupid (spend) so much money on clothes.
- 26 My son is mature enough (make) his own decisions.
- 27 (ride) a motorbike without a helmet is dangerous.
- 28 My father isn't used to (be) told what to do.
- 29 There's no point in (argue) over trivial things.
- 30 The headmaster didn't allow us (organise) a school dance.
- 31 My mother can't resist (eat) sweets although she is on a diet.
- 32 The pain in your back is likely (get) worse.

12 Use the prompts to write sentences as in the example.

- 1 I am too tired / take you out now after / work for so many hours
I am too tired to take you out now after working for so many hours.
- 2 there is no point in / complain about / spend so much money on the car
- 3 I don't remember / get a letter from you
- 4 my brother spends most of his free time / listen to music and / watch TV
- 5 they accused him of / steal the money and he admitted / do it in the end
- 6 they tried / prevent me from / testify in court / but I finally managed / do it

13 Rewrite the sentences using the verbs from the box.

suspect	admit	agree	apologise	deny	advise
accuse	suggest	refuse	promise		

- 1 My sister said, 'No, I didn't take your car.'
 My sister *denied taking* my car.
- 2 Ann said to me, 'No, I won't give you any money.'
 Ann me any money.
- 3 Bill said to his wife, 'I am so sorry I spoilt our holiday.'
 Bill their holiday.
- 4 Martha said, 'Let's go sailing this weekend.'
 Martha sailing that weekend.
- 5 Alice said to me, 'Yes, I'll help you with your homework.'
 Alice me with my homework.
- 6 Brenda said to me, 'You took my watch.'
 Brenda her watch.
- 7 The man said, 'Yes, I stole the car.'
 The man the car.
- 8 'Don't worry, Peter; I'll take you to the park tomorrow,' said his father.
 Peter's father him to the park the next day.
- 9 She said to him, 'I am not sure but I think you broke my vase.'
 She her vase.
- 10 'You'd better stay in bed for a couple of days,' said the doctor.
 The doctor in bed for a couple of days.

14 Correct the sentences where necessary. Put a tick (✓) below those which do not need correcting

1 She couldn't cope with worked for so many hours a day.
She couldn't cope with working for so many hours a day.

2 Pam would rather to drink wine than beer.

3 She admitted to steal the money from the safe.

4 Mr Anderson can't stand to be treated dishonestly.

5 They postponed going to see their grandparents.

6 I don't recollect arranging a meeting for today.

7 Jim advised me working overtime to earn more money.

8 I don't enjoy to be in crowded places.

9 I look forward to travel abroad.

10 Mother didn't allow us watch TV at all last night.



15 Complete the sentences using your own words.

1 I really can't afford

2 I spend my spare time

3 My parents don't let me

4 I am old enough

5 I really can't stand

6 I avoid

7 It's dangerous

8 I promised

16

Write sentences using *want*, as in the example.*Don't drink alcohol. Drink some milk instead.**I don't want you to drink alcohol. I want you to drink milk instead.*

1 Don't stay up late. Go to bed early instead.

2 Don't work so much. Have a rest instead.

3 Don't talk to me like that. Be polite instead.

4 Don't make so much noise. Be quiet instead.

5 Don't take my car. Take a taxi instead.

17

Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the gerund or full infinitive form.

1 She pretended *to be* (be) angry but she wasn't very good at *hiding* (hide) her true feelings.

2 It's not worth (ask) him (help) you (paint) the house because he objects to (do) anything which involves physical effort.

3 The suspect denied (steal) the money and refused (answer) any questions.

4 (read) a good book at bedtime makes it difficult for me (get) to sleep. I can't help (think) about the plot when I close my eyes.

5 In addition to (offer) (teach) me how (play) chess, she promised (buy) me an expensive chess set.

6 We went to the football club (practise) (take) free kicks.

7 I would like (know) how she gave up (smoke) so easily.

8 When I had finished (tidy up), I asked Carol if she felt like (go) for a walk but she said she would prefer (watch) a video.

18

Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the gerund, full infinitive or bare infinitive form.

1 I was beginning *to think* (think) that you weren't coming.

2 They made him (leave) because he was trying (cause) trouble.

3 We'd better (stop) (shout), otherwise they might (throw) us out.

4 I'd rather (not go) to the party if it means (watch) Barry (behave) like a six-year-old all evening.

5 I regret (tell) her the truth as she seems (be) so sad now. I really didn't mean (upset) her, but she won't stop (blame) me for her unhappiness.

Phrasal verbs: *make*

1 Use the verb **make** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

out (2) up (4) of for up for over

- 1 Since you've missed the last train home, I'll *make up* (prepare) a bed for you in the attic.
- 2 Is that really what happened or did you (invent) the story ?
- 3 Apparently, Joe and Cathy have (become friends again) after their terrible argument.
- 4 As soon as the fox sensed our presence it (went towards) the forest.
- 5 What did you (think of) the art exhibition?
- 6 She (pretended) that she was sick just to avoid doing the test.
- 7 It's difficult to (see clearly) the writing on this old coin but I think it's Arabic.
- 8 He's usually slow in the first part of the race but he (gets back) the lost time in the latter stages.
- 9 I (compensated for) the disappointment of our not being able to go to the circus by taking the family out for a meal.
- 10 When Mr Wright retired he (transferred ownership of) the company to his children.

Phrasal verbs: *mixed*

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

knock out knock over ~~live down~~ live on live through
live up to mind out miss out on

- 1 It was such an embarrassing mistake that the politician will find it difficult to *live down* it (cause it to be forgotten).
- 2 All they've got to (manage with) is a small pension.
- 3 During the meal I (pushed over) a glass of wine.
- 4 His head struck the table as he fell and he was (rendered unconscious).
- 5 The play didn't (reach the level of) my expectations so I left halfway through.
- 6 ! (Pay attention!) You nearly hit a motorcyclist when you changed lanes.
- 7 If I hadn't gone to the party, I would have (been unable to take part in) all the fun.
- 8 The old soldier told us about some of the most frightening moments he had (experienced).

Phrasal verbs: mixed

3

Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

pass away pass ~~off~~ as pass out pay back pick on
pick up pull down pull off pull up ring up rub out

- 1 They managed to get into the jeweller's after closing time by *passing* themselves *off as* (appearing to be) security guards.
- 2 The old lady (died) in her sleep last night.
- 3 I think I would have (fainted) if I'd stayed in there any longer.
- 4 Don't show you're frightened of them, or they'll you (treat you very badly).
- 5 He's been able to (learn) several languages during his travels.
- 6 They were determined to him (gain revenge) for the way he'd treated them.
- 7 Two men (stopped) in a limousine and asked us the way to the nearest post office.
- 8 The old bowling alley has been (demolished) and a new cinema complex is being built.
- 9 It took me ages to (remove) the graffiti on the desk.
- 10 Bob's going to (phone) the secretary to find out what time the meeting starts.
- 11 Janine said she'd win the tournament and she actually it (succeeded in doing it).

Words easily confused

4

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	meal course dessert starter	a For the main <i>course</i> I would like a steak. b Apple pie and ice cream is my favourite c Breakfast is the most important of the day. d I'll have soup for a , please.
2	line aisle corridor row	a Why are you in the when you should be in your classroom? b They live in a street with two neat of identical bungalows. c I prefer a window seat to a(n) seat when I'm flying. d Don't walk on the railway e The bride looked nervous as she walked down the
3	guess wonder reckon consider	a I what Bob's done with the TV guide. b Would you a career in the army? c Can you how many people came to the party? d I it'll take weeks to repair this machine.
4	display show demonstration exhibition	a Reg Hawkins has won first prize in the flower yet again. b It was the best firework I have ever seen. c Give us a(n) of how the machine works. d All the major manufacturers were represented at the computer
5	lump slice piece sheet bar	a That's an interesting of information. b Use a fresh of paper for each question. c I'd like two of ham in my sandwich. d How much sugar do you take, one or two? e I've bought a of chocolate for you.

6	salary income investment interest	a The bank pays on my account twice a year. b As the managing director of a large company she gets a large c His consists largely of rent he receives from property he owns. d Buying shares in mining wasn't considered a wise at that time.
7	compartment ward section department branch	a During my stay in hospital I shared a with nine other patients. b The train is nearly empty, with only a few passengers in each c A new of the bank is being opened here next week. d He works for a government but I don't know which one. e The club is divided into several
8	heal cure recover treat	a He was taken to Walton Hospital, where he was for shock. b It'll take time for her to from her injuries. c The wound more quickly than I anticipated. d If this stuff doesn't you, I don't know what will.
9	allowance permission permit pass	a A to fish this stretch of the river will cost you £150 a year. b You'll receive a monthly travel together with your salary. c The headmaster gave us to leave school early. d Please wear your so that the security personnel can see it easily.
10	stagger wander stroll tiptoe limp	a The wounded soldier towards the safety of the forest. b She loves through the park on Sunday afternoon. c After around Europe, Jed decided to return to the States. d I into the nursery so that I wouldn't wake the baby. e He had to off the field with a leg injury.
11	damp wet humid mild	a Where have you been? You're through. b We'd been expecting lots of snow but it turned out to be a winter. c Having lived in the tropics, he's used to a climate. d The old cottage is inside because it has been empty for a year.
12	fit match suit go with	a Red both black and white. b If the pullover doesn't you, you can exchange it for a larger size. c It looks great on you. It you perfectly. d After buying a necklace, she searched for a pair of earrings to
13	depend rely trust base	a Our success on hard work alone. b His new film is on a book by Stephen King. c You'd be a fool to Max. d I think I can on Francis to do what is necessary.
14	drought draught current flood	a There's a in here. Please close the window. b Strong make swimming here very dangerous. c have become common after heavy rain. d is always a problem in areas of little rainfall.
15	wide broad deep extensive	a The satellite channel provided coverage of the match. b We have a range of sports equipment here. c As she was in thought she didn't hear what I said. d With a grin, he admitted playing a practical joke on me.

Word formation

5

Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Verb	Adjective
terror/terrorism/terrorist		terrified/terrifying	looseness		
		broken	intelligence	-	
	vary				(un)deniable
	advise			experience	
	fly		sureness		(un)avoidable
		living/alive/lively		impoverish	
ripeness			filling	fill	
sharpness				agree	
weakness				-	jealous
half		half	capability	-	
		congratulatory			additional/added
	hunger				mixed
	-	ill			possessive
	fail				
observation/observer					

6

Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- Carol's sudden *departure* took us all by surprise.
- An of mine works at the stadium.
- Although the dog looked vicious, it was, in fact, very
- This watch is of great value to me.
- The team will be presented with their medals at the end of the match.
- There's no between the two methods.
- The main to the hotel is in Lime Street.
- Although the sentence is correct, it doesn't sound natural.
- These tools will you to do the job more quickly.
- I have no of that conversation.

DEPART
ACQUAINT
AFFECTION
SENTIMENT
WIN
SIMILAR
ENTER
GRAMMAR
ABLE
RECOLLECT

Preposition practice

7

Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

for with by in of at from about

- We all have great confidence *in* you.
- Angus is quite different his brothers.
- Who's going to pay all this stuff?
- I'll deal the situation the end of the meeting.
- I didn't see the whole the film. What happened the end?
- Albert is old-fashioned and doesn't approve women paying their share of the bill.
- I wouldn't argue her it if I were you.
- Being short cash, he asked whether he could pay cheque.
- Send a doctor at once!
- There's nothing to worry
- How did you remove the stain the carpet?
- Poems that rhyme are easier to learn heart.

Indirect Statements, Indirect Questions, Indirect Commands & Requests, Reporting Verbs

Indirect Statements

When what a person says is reported, certain changes have to be made. The following tables show the changes made with regard to verbs, places and time.

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Present Simple He said, 'I work many hours a day.'	Past Simple He said that he worked many hours a day.
Present Continuous He said, 'I am waiting for Mary.'	Past Continuous He said that he was waiting for Mary.
Past Simple He said, 'I told her everything.'	Past Perfect Simple He said that he had told her everything.
Past Continuous He said, 'She was waiting for two hours.'	Past Perfect Continuous He said that she had been waiting for two hours.
Present Perfect Simple He said, 'I have told her everything.'	Past Perfect Simple He said that he had told her everything.
Present Perfect Continuous He said, 'I have been waiting for months.'	Past Perfect Continuous He said that he had been waiting for months.
will He said, 'I will see you tomorrow.'	would He said that he would see me the next day.
can She said to me, 'I can help you.'	could She told me that she could help me.
may/might 'I may be late,' Jill said to us.	might Jill told us that she might be late.
must She said to me, 'You must do your homework.'	had to She told me that I had to do my homework.

Changes of Expressions

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
now	→ then
today, tonight	→ that day, that night
yesterday	→ the day before, the previous day
(three days) ago	→ (three days) before
last week/month	→ the previous week/month, the week/month before
tomorrow	→ the following next day
next week/year	→ the following week/year
here	→ there
at the moment	→ at that moment
this/these	→ that/those

Note:

He said, '...'

He **said** (that) ...

He said to me, '...'

He **told me** (that) ...

He told me, '...'

He **told me** (that) ...

Say & Tell

Say	Tell
say so	tell the truth
say good morning	tell a lie
say something/ anything	tell a story
say sorry	tell a secret
	tell the difference
say to sb that ...	tell sb that ...
say that ...	tell sb about sth

1 Fill in the gaps with the right form of either say or tell.

- 1 She didn't me that she would be late.
- 2 He that it was Mary's fault.
- 3 Tom so many lies that nobody believes him any more.
- 4 Sam to me, 'I wasn't accepted by that college.'
- 5 He didn't anything before he left.

2 Choose the indirect statement that means the same as the direct statement.

- 1 'I got a job on an oil rig,' said Steven.
 - a Steven said that he has got a job on an oil rig.
 - (b) Steven said that he had got a job on an oil rig.**
- 2 'I am short of money again,' Sally said to me.
 - a Sally said me that she was short of money again.
 - b Sally told me that she was short of money again.**
- 3 'I am doing my homework at the moment,' said the little boy.
 - a The little boy said that he is doing his homework at that moment.
 - b The little boy said that he was doing his homework at that moment.**
- 4 'You broke the vase on purpose,' said Grandma.
 - a Grandma said that I broken the vase on purpose.
 - b Grandma said that I had broken the vase on purpose.**
- 5 He said to me, 'You spend a lot of money on clothes.'
 - a He told me that I spent a lot of money on clothes.
 - b He told me that I had spent a lot of money on clothes.**
- 6 He said, 'She has been listening to music for two hours.'
 - a He said that she had been listening to music for two hours.
 - b He said that she was listening to music for two hours.**
- 7 Our teacher said, 'You didn't do well in the test.'
 - a Our teacher said that we haven't done well in the test.
 - b Our teacher said that we hadn't done well in the test.**
- 8 'I've tried hard,' said James.
 - a James said that he tries hard.
 - b James said that he had tried hard.**

3 Study the example and complete the sentences.

Dave said to me, 'I won't sell my car because I can't afford to buy a new one.'

Dave told *me* that *he* wouldn't sell *his* car because *he* couldn't afford to buy a new one.

- 1 'I have a message for your brother,' I said to her.
I told that had a message for brother.
- 2 'I've missed the train; I'll be late for work,' said Betty.
Betty said that had missed the train and would be late for work.
- 3 Alice said, 'My teacher wants me to rewrite my composition.'
Alice said that teacher wanted to rewrite composition.
- 4 Mrs Brown said to me, 'I am waiting for my daughter.'
Mrs Brown told that was waiting for daughter.
- 5 Bill said to Jane, 'I would like to take you out for dinner tomorrow.'
Bill told Jane that would like to take out for dinner the following day.
- 6 John said to Sally, 'I've brought a present for your birthday.'
John told Sally that had brought a present for birthday.
- 7 Carol said to him, 'I need you to help me carry some bags.'
Carol told that needed to help carry some bags.
- 8 My mother said to my sister, 'You have to go to the supermarket to buy some things for me.'
My mother told my sister that had to go to the supermarket to buy some things for

4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Bill said, 'I am late.'
Bill said that he <i>was</i> late. | 11 George said, 'I am going to resign.'
George said that he to resign. |
| 2 Peter said, 'I want you to help me.'
Peter said that he me to help him. | 12 He said, 'I can't cope with this problem.'
He said that he with that problem. |
| 3 Tony said, 'I am having a party.'
Tony said that he a party. | 13 Ted said, 'I may come home late today.'
Ted said that he home late that day. |
| 4 Mark said, 'I have seen that film.'
Mark said that he that film. | 14 Greg said, 'I might be home earlier.'
Greg said that he home earlier. |
| 5 Tom said, 'I was listening to music.'
Tom said that he to music. | 15 Andy said, 'I must leave now.'
Andy said that he then. |
| 6 He said, 'I sold my car yesterday.'
He said that he his car the previous day. | |
| 7 Eric said, 'I have been working all day.'
Eric said that he all day. | |
| 8 Ben said, 'I will leave tonight.'
Ben said that he that night. | |
| 9 Ian said, 'I will be travelling tomorrow.'
Ian said that he the next day. | |
| 10 Tim said, 'I will have finished my work.'
Tim said that he his work. | |



- 1 She said to me, 'I knew that you would be late.'
She told me that she had known that I would be late.
- 2 'She didn't invite me to the party,' said Peter.
- 3 Kate said to her mother, 'I haven't finished tidying my room yet.'
- 4 His mother said to us, 'He has been talking on the phone for an hour.'
- 5 Ben said to his girlfriend, 'I really don't want to go to the cinema tonight.'
- 6 'I am trying to concentrate on my work,' said John.
- 7 'He can't afford to buy a new house,' his mother said.
- 8 'If you want to smoke, you will have to go outside,' said the old lady.
- 9 'You really shouldn't spend so much money on silly things,' said his mother.
- 10 'There is a lot of traffic because there's been an accident,' said the policeman.
- 11 Her brother said to us, 'She will come to your house when she has finished her homework.'
- 12 'She didn't accept our invitation,' said Peter.
- 13 Mary said, 'I like mountain climbing but I don't go very often.'
- 14 Richard said to us, 'I've lost the map and I don't know the way to the port.'
- 15 'I haven't spoken to Jill since last month,' said Fiona.
- 16 David said to me, 'I haven't been able to send you any letters.'
- 17 'We may come to your party but we're not sure,' said Helen.
- 18 'I shall never believe a word you say,' said Mike.
- 19 His mother said to him, 'You must do your homework now.'
- 20 Dad said to me, 'You shouldn't have come home so late.'
- 21 Kim said to Mike, 'I will have finished my work by the time you arrive.'
- 22 'Kevin bought me flowers for my birthday,' said Rebecca.
- 23 'I met an old friend of mine two days ago,' said Emily.
- 24 Clark said to her, 'I haven't read the book that you lent me yet.'
- 25 'I'll help you with your homework,' said my mother.

6 Choose the direct statement that means the same as the indirect statement.

- 1 She said that I could use the lift if I wanted to.
 - a She said, 'You can use the lift if you want to.'
 - b She said, 'You use the lift if you wanted to.'
- 2 Mike told me that he needed more time to finish the work.
 - a Mike told to me, 'I need more time to finish the work.'
 - b Mike said to me, 'I need more time to finish the work.'
- 3 The old lady told the policeman that a thief had stolen her bag.
 - a The old lady said to the policeman, 'A thief stole my bag.'
 - b The old lady said to the policeman, 'A thief was stealing my bag.'
- 4 Mark told his mother that he wouldn't take any money without asking again.
 - a Mike said to his mother, 'I won't take any money without asking again.'
 - b Mike said to his mother, 'I don't take any money without asking again.'
- 5 She told me that she had been trying to call me for over two hours.
 - a She said to me, 'I am trying to call you for over two hours.'
 - b She said to me, 'I've been trying to call you for over two hours.'
- 6 Lucy told me that she couldn't trust me any more.
 - a Lucy said to me, 'I won't trust you any more.'
 - b Lucy said to me, 'I can't trust you any more.'
- 7 Mary told us that she had already finished.
 - a Mary said to us, 'I already finished.'
 - b Mary said to us, 'I've already finished.'
- 8 Penny said that she had to leave then.
 - a Penny said, 'I have to leave then.'
 - b Penny said, 'I have to leave now.'

7 Find the mistakes and correct the sentences.

- 1 Tom told that he wouldn't be back before noon.
 Tom said that he wouldn't be back before noon.
- 2 Our landlord told us that he has already made his decision.
- 3 She said me that she had to go to bed early that night.
- 4 I told him that he has to look for a better job.
- 5 Mark said us that he had forgotten to book a table.
- 6 Sally told us she have already paid the bill.
- 7 Ian told that he didn't want me to help him.
- 8 Ann told me that he seem to be in trouble.
- 9 The eye witness said that he has already testified.
- 10 My brother said that he be coming to your party.

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 'I can't stand the way Ann treats me,' said Robbie.
Robbie said *that he couldn't stand the way Ann treated him.*
- 2 'It's the first time I have been in trouble with the law,' said Margaret to her lawyer.
Margaret told her lawyer
- 3 Alex said that she had seen Max the week before.
'I
- 4 'I am waiting for Mark,' she said.
She said
- 5 He told me that he hadn't made a decision yet but he would let me know as soon as he had.
'I
- 6 'She fell down the stairs because her heel broke,' said Michael.
Michael told me that

Indirect Questions

When we turn direct questions into indirect questions:

- tenses change as in statements.
- pronouns, possessive adjectives, adverbs of time and place change as in statements.
- the interrogative form of the verb changes to the affirmative.
- we do not use question marks.

	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
When a direct question has a question word like who, which, how , etc, this word is used in the indirect question.	He asked, ' Where do you live?' She asked him, ' What happened?' He asked, ' Who lives here?'	He asked me where I lived. She asked him what had happened. He asked who lived there.
When a direct question doesn't have a question word, if/whether is used in the indirect question.	'Do you work a lot?' she asked. He asked, 'Are you married?' He asked, 'Did you tell her?'	She asked me if/whether I worked a lot. He asked me if/whether I was married. He asked me if/whether I had told her.

Complete the indirect questions so that they mean the same as the direct questions.

- 1 'When did Mr Brown leave the club?' asked the inspector.
The inspector asked *when Mr Brown had left the club.*
- 2 'Where's the tin opener, George?' asked Yvonne.
Yvonne asked George
- 3 'What do you think happened?' enquired Erica.
Erica asked me
- 4 'Are you having a party on your birthday, Harry?' asked Tom.
Tom asked Harry
- 5 'Do you have change for a £10 note?' he asked.
He wanted to know
- 6 'Why do you want to work for Shell?' asked the interviewer.
The interviewer asked me

- 1 The man asked the policeman, 'How did she get into the house?'
The man asked the policeman how she had got into the house.
- 2 'Are there any letters for me?' asked Oliver.
- 3 'How long have you been learning French?' the interviewer asked.
- 4 'Where are you going for your winter holidays?' I asked her.
- 5 'Can I see Mr Henderson?' I asked the lady.
- 6 'Did anyone see exactly what happened?' asked the policeman.
- 7 'Have you ever flown a plane?' the boy asked me.
- 8 'Where can I park my car?' the man asked.
- 9 'Do you grow your own vegetables?' the woman asked me.
- 10 'When is your birthday?' she asked me.
- 11 'Did you remember to lock the door?' my wife asked me.
- 12 'Do you speak English?' he asked me.
- 13 'Have you ever been mountain climbing?' Sarah asked Emma.
- 14 'What time are you flying tomorrow?' Mum asked me.
- 15 'How much will it cost me?' he asked.
- 16 'Do you enjoy reading science fiction books?' she asked Tony.
- 17 'Did you go to Ann's party last night?' Mary asked him.
- 18 'Will you give me a lift to the station?' she asked me.
- 19 'When did Emily graduate from university?' he wondered.
- 20 'Do you have access to the Internet?' the boy asked me.





Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.



- 1 'Are you staying with us tonight?' asked Bill.
Bill asked if *I was staying* with them that night.
- 2 Sarah asked, 'Will she come with us to the cinema?'
Sarah asked if to the cinema.
- 3 'Do you know the answer to the question or not?' asked the teacher.
The teacher asked to the question or not.
- 4 Mum asked me, 'Why did you turn down the job offer?'
Mum asked the job offer.
- 5 'Who has been using my computer?' asked my mother.
My mother asked computer.
- 6 'Do you want to see the castle?' asked the guide.
The guide asked the castle.
- 7 'Can you work on the night shift?' he asked.
He asked on the night shift.
- 8 'Would you like to join us?' they asked.
They asked to join them.
- 9 'Why did you give him the money?' asked Emily.
Emily asked the money.
- 10 'How are you getting on with your new teacher?' Mum asked me.
Mum asked me new teacher.



Indirect Commands & Requests

	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Commands tell + infinitive	He said to me, ' Stand up. ' I said to him, ' Don't go out. '	He told me to stand up. I told him not to go out.
Requests ask + infinitive	' Please stop, ' he said to me. ' Please don't say that again, ' he said to me.	He asked me to stop. He asked me not to say that again.



Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1 'Please don't mention that again,' he said to me.
He asked me not to mention that again.
- 2 'Don't bite your nails,' she said to him.
.....
- 3 'Drink all your milk,' she said to her.
.....
- 4 'Stop complaining, please,' she said to me.
.....
- 5 'Don't lend Mary any money,' she said to me.
.....
- 6 'Don't be rude to our guests,' she said to me.
.....
- 7 'Tidy up your room, please' she said to him.
.....
- 8 'Please follow me,' the guide said to us.
.....
- 9 'Go for a walk,' Mum said to me.
.....
- 10 'Stop watching TV,' he said to me.
.....

Reporting Verbs

	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
Suggest + -ing	'Let's go to the theatre,' he said.	He suggested going to the theatre.
Suggest that sb should do sth	'Why don't you go to the doctor?' he said to me.	He suggested that I should go to the doctor.
Refuse to do sth	'No, I won't help you,' he said.	He refused to help me.
Deny + -ing Deny that you have done sth	No, I didn't break the vase,' said Sally.	Sally denied breaking/having broken the vase. Sally denied that she had broken the vase.

13 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 'Let's eat out tonight,' Sally said.
Sally suggested *eating out that night*.
- 'Why don't you give up smoking?' the doctor said to me.
The doctor suggested that
- 'Let's watch a film,' she said.
She suggested
- 'Let's talk about it now,' I said.
I suggested
- 'Why don't we go to an island instead?' she said to us.
She suggested that

14 Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech, using **refuse** or **deny**.

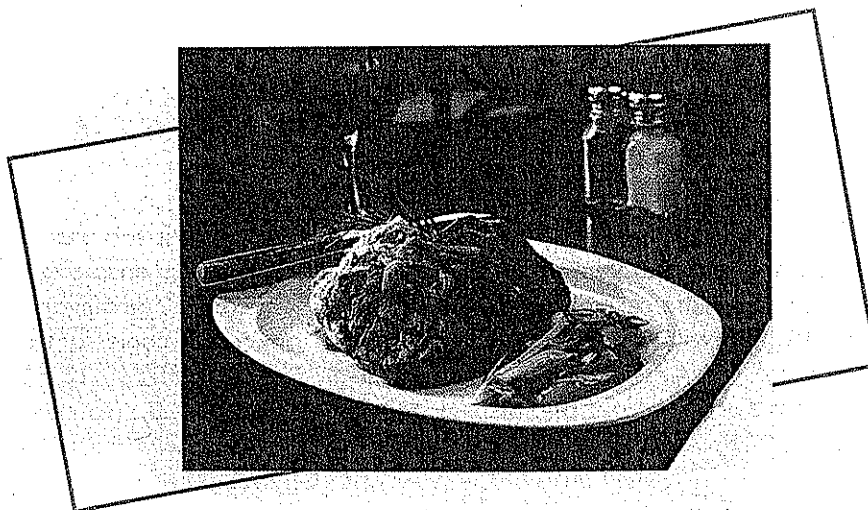
- 'No, I didn't take money without asking,' said the girl.
The girl *denied that she taken money without asking / denied taking money without asking*.
- 'No, I won't come with you tomorrow,' she said.
She
- 'I didn't damage your car,' said Charles.
Charles
- 'No, I didn't use your typewriter,' Michele said.
Michele
- 'No, I won't go to the dentist,' said Alice.
Alice
- 'No, I haven't said anything to him,' she said.
She
- 'No, I didn't steal the car,' he said.
He
- 'No, I won't lend you my car,' my mother said.
My mother
- 'No, I didn't take part in the robbery,' said the young man.
The young man
- 'No, I won't forgive you,' she said.
She

More Reporting Verbs

	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
beg sb (not) to do sth	She said to me, 'Please, help me.'	She begged me to help her.
	His mother said to the man, 'Please, don't hurt him.'	His mother begged the man not to hurt him.
advise sb to do sth	'You should cut down on smoking,' the doctor said to him.	The doctor advised him to cut down on smoking.
order sb to do sth	'Stop talking nonsense,' she said to him.	She ordered him to stop talking nonsense.
remind sb to do sth	'Don't forget to take the dog out,' she said to me.	She reminded me to take the dog out.
apologise (to sb) for (-ing) sth	'I am sorry I hurt your feelings,' she said.	She apologised (to me) for hurting my feelings.
accuse sb of (-ing) sth	'You stole my pen,' she said to me.	She accused me of stealing her pen.

15 Change the sentences from direct to indirect speech using the appropriate reporting verb.

- 'You took my car and crashed it,' he said to me.
He ... *accused me of taking his car and crashing it.*
- 'You should eat less fatty food,' said the doctor.
The doctor
- 'Don't forget to bring the things I asked for,' she said to me.
She
- 'I am so sorry I damaged your car,' the child said.
The child
- 'Kevin hit John with his bag,' said the teacher.
The teacher
- 'Leave the courtroom immediately,' the judge said to the jury.
The judge
- She said to me, 'If I were you, I would consult a lawyer.'
She
- 'Please don't be angry with me' she said to her father.
She



Phrasal verbs: *put*

1 Use the verb **put** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

by down (3) off (2) out up (2) ~~in~~ for up with on through

- 1 The workers have *put in for* (requested) a pay rise but the management are unlikely to agree to it.
- 2 By (saving) only £50 a month you can be sure of a wonderful Christmas.
- 3 How does she (tolerate) her boss's constant complaints?
- 4 Knowing how difficult the medical course was, I her (discouraged her from) trying to get on it.
- 5 I can't understand how she eats so many cakes without (gaining) any weight.
- 6 It's no use her (criticising her) all the time. A little encouragement would be better.
- 7 If the operation proves unsuccessful, the animal will have to be (destroyed).
- 8 I've (written) my name on the list of volunteers to work at the old people's home.
- 9 Tonight's choir practice has been (postponed). It'll now take place on Wednesday.
- 10 It took the fire brigade thirty minutes to (extinguish) the fire.
- 11 The telephonist said she couldn't (connect) me to extension 215 because the line was busy.
- 12 They seem to (increase) the prices in that supermarket every month.
- 13 I hate to ask but could you me (give accommodation) for the night as I don't have enough money for a hotel.

Phrasal verbs: *run, see*

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

run down (2) run into run off run off with run out of run over
run through ~~see~~ off see through (2) see to

- 1 I'm sorry I couldn't come and *see* (say goodbye to) you *off* at the airport last Saturday.
- 2 It was the maid who (took) the silver, not the butler.
- 3 I almost (drove over) a kitten on my way to work but fortunately I avoided it.
- 4 Guess who I (met by chance) in town this morning?
- 5 These batteries have (lost power) so we'd better get some new ones.
- 6 Sally's not very popular with her colleagues because she's always (criticising) them
- 7 When Tom says he'll do a job he always (completes) it
- 8 If only I had (not been fooled by) her lies. I suppose I'm just too trusting.
- 9 The director (read) your report (quickly) and found it quite encouraging.
- 10 Don't worry about the music for the party. Alice said she'd (arrange) it.
- 11 I'll be late for lunch because I've got to (photocopy) some copies of these letters on the Xerox.
- 12 Children are dying in North Korea because the hospitals have (exhausted their supplies of) medicine.

Words easily confused

3

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	claw hoof paw talon	a The cat sank its <i>claws</i> into my hand and ran away. b My dog was limping because it had a thorn stuck in its c It was the unmistakable sound of a horse's d An eagle's are very strong indeed.
2	demand order inform instruct	a I wasn't about any change in the timetable. b Who a ham and mushroom pizza? c All employees will be in the art of self-defence. d The customer to speak to the manager in person. e Whoever the soldiers to attack made a terrible mistake.
3	agenda calendar diary list directory catalogue memo	a Have you included Liam on the guest ? b Look up her telephone number in the c Have you read the I left on your desk? d I'll check my and see if I'm free on Tuesday. e There's a hanging on the kitchen wall. f As this item is not on the , we can't discuss it at this meeting. g He does most of his shopping through a mail order h Have you put rice on the shopping ?
4	bank border boundary	a Thousands of refugees have crossed the since fighting began. b This wall marks the between our property and theirs. c As a teenager, he spent hours fishing from the of the river.
5	urgency risk emergency danger	a According to Pat, it was a matter of some b You can only use the phone in a(n) c Several employees are in of losing their jobs. d Don't take a(n) if you can avoid it. e A general should never put his soldiers' lives at
6	bunch packet collection bundle	a I always have a small of grapes after my midday meal in summer. b She has a fine of antique silver cups. c The tramp wandered the streets with his possessions tied in a d I'll take a of flowers when I visit them. e He threw his of cigarettes away, promising never to smoke again.
7	decrease drop lower lessen	a Please your voice. b Take some extra blankets in case the temperature below zero. c The number of burglaries has not in urban areas. d He wears a special belt to the strain on his back.
8	district region area territory	a Urban have far more facilities than rural b A male lion will attack any rival that enters its c We spent our holiday in a wine-producing in France. d All building plans must be approved by the council.

9	lift raise improve	a When soldiers are entertained by famous singers, it their spirits. b How much money did the jumble sale ? c your hand before you answer the teacher's question. d Her condition has considerably since the treatment began.
10	injection operation examination check-up	a I normally have my annual in May. b It's a straightforward so there's no need to worry. c This drug can only be administered by d All employees are given a medical before they start work here.
11	refer mention comment note	a Please don't the excursion to Howard. b He didn't on your work at all. c I wish I hadn't to my ambitions during the discussion. d The robbery occurred so quickly that only one witness what the robbers were wearing.
12	nation tribe people race	a The human is responsible for its future. b Anthropologists are studying the that live deep in the jungle. c Some just don't know how to behave! d Several have applied to become members of the UN. e Probably the most famous Indian is the Apache.
13	cash credit cheque installment	a She never pays in b Your next is due on 5th July. c Can I pay by ? d I got these goods on so I haven't paid for them yet. e We accept all major cards.
14	single only unique separate	a Being a(n) child, she had no brothers or sisters to play with. b It's a(n) opportunity for you to travel abroad. c Are you married or ? d Remember to keep the letters from head office e I'd rather have two rooms than a double.
15	latest latter late recent last	a She's the person I expected to see at the reception. b research suggests that cold fusion is impossible. c Moorcroft and Coe showed great ability but only the won an Olympic medal. d His film is set to become a blockbuster. e The Dr Evans will be missed by family and friends alike.
16	combine connect join share stick	a There is no evidence to the two crimes. b I'd like to a secret with you. c If you don't together, one of you may get lost. d It's far from easy for me to work with leisure. e Please the sweets I gave you with your cousin. f How do I go about the club?

Word formation

4 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Noun	Verb	Adjective
<i>continuation</i>	.....	continual/-uous	.....	originate	.....
.....	.....	lit	.....	.....	hijacked
.....	recover	-	.....	.....	lying
.....	determine	.....	.....	-	(im)modest
intent/intention	.....	.....	.....	befriend	.....
.....	.....	(un)civilised	.....	.....	(un)employed
.....	.....	(mis)guided	.....	care	.....
.....	know	.....	(un)consciousness	-	.....
.....	talk	.....	.....	smoke	.....
.....	-	fit	.....	.....	(in)admissible
number	number	.....	hope	.....	.....
volunteer	.....	.....	.....	harm	.....
.....	.....	(in)soluble	misery	-	.....
.....	argue	.....	tightness	.....	.....

5 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1 It's quite <i>inexpensive</i> so even you can afford it. | EXPENSE |
| 2 Both competitors hit the target with great | ACCURATE |
| 3 The informed us that the operation had been entirely successful. | SURGERY |
| 4 He has no ability whatsoever. | ART |
| 5 There was deafening as soon as the group appeared on stage. | APPLAUD |
| 6 Have you seen my list anywhere? | SHOP |
| 7 It gets quite cold at night so warm is a must. | CLOTHE |
| 8 In the, we thought he was rather unfriendly. | BEGIN |
| 9 Police are looking into the sudden of several priceless icons. | APPEAR |
| 10 The forest fire was the work of ruthless | ARSON |

Preposition practice

6 Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

- | | | | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|------|------|----|----|-------|
| of | by | on | at | with | from | to | in | about |
|----|----|----|----|------|------|----|----|-------|
- *At* first, I was afraid *of* him but now we are good friends.
 - What did you mean that remark.
 - I regret being jealous her.
 - Most of Jack's teachers are satisfied his progress.
 - Many people go to live the coast when they have retired work.
 - Being good physics, Elizabeth was often asked to explain difficult theories her fellow students.
 - Let me introduce you George, my best man.
 - We arrived Berlin night.
 - my opinion, people who don't get to work time don't care their job.
 - You should be proud what you have achieved.

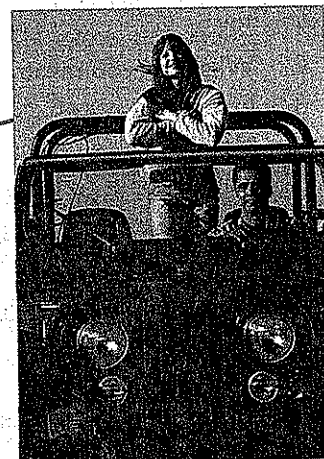
Question Tags

Question tags are short questions at the end of a positive or negative sentence. We use them when we want to confirm that what we are saying is correct or when we want someone to agree with what we are saying.

Form	Examples
<p>■ Question tags are formed by adding an auxiliary verb or a modal verb and a subject pronoun to a statement. If the statement is positive, the tag is negative and vice versa.</p>	<p>They are staying at the Hilton, aren't they? Tanya hasn't phoned, has she? I'd better leave, hadn't I? Patrick can't drive, can he? They had taken the exam once before, hadn't they? There weren't many people in the restaurant, were there? They will go home soon, won't they? She never lends money, does she?</p>
<p>■ When the verb in the sentence is in the Present or Past Simple, we form the question tag with do, does or did.</p>	<p>She works for the government, doesn't she? He doesn't drive to work, does he? He broke the world record last year, didn't he?</p>
<p>■ Some question tags are formed differently.</p> <p>I am ..., aren't I? Let's ..., shall we? Imperative ..., will you? This/That is ..., isn't it? These/Those are ..., aren't they?</p>	<p>I am improving, aren't I? Let's go swimming, shall we? Help me with these bags, will you? This is your notebook, isn't it? Those are your neighbours, aren't they?</p>

Exercise Add question tags to the following statements.

- You paid the rent on Monday, *didn't you* ?
- There aren't any vacancies at the factory, ?
- Let's turn on the television, ?
- You used to work with my cousin, ?
- They never get travel sick, ?
- They'll be here soon, ?
- She's never beaten you at tennis, ?
- It doesn't hurt, ?
- I am right, ?
- He can't come with us, ?



So & Neither

So and Neither are used to express agreement.

Form	Examples
When we want to agree with a positive statement, we use so + the auxiliary verb of the main sentence.	She is watching TV. So is he.
If the main sentence doesn't have an auxiliary verb, then we use do , does or did depending on the tense.	I like reading. So do I. / So does Tony. John came to the party. So did Sam.
When we want to agree with a negative statement, we use neither + the auxiliary verb of the main sentence.	She didn't finish the test. Neither did I.

So & Neither

Tense	So	Neither
Present Simple: to be	She's lazy. So am I.	He isn't happy. Neither is she.
Present Simple	I like rock music. So do I.	I don't live in this town. Neither do we.
Present Continuous	I'm studying French. So is he.	Emma isn't watching TV. Neither am I.
Present Perfect Simple	Jessie has gone to bed. So have the children.	I haven't seen him. Neither has she.
Future Simple	We will go at the weekend. So will we.	I won't help him. Neither will I.
Past Simple	Toby came to the party. So did Sam.	We didn't bring a present. Neither did we.
Past Perfect Simple	She had left. So had he.	They hadn't forgotten. Neither had we.
Modals	I can swim. So can I.	She shouldn't talk like that. Neither should he.

2

Complete the following sentences by using **so** or **neither** and the words in brackets.

- They're spending Christmas at home and *so are we* (we)
- I wasn't at the meeting and (Marilyn)
- We haven't been invited to the party and (Rob)
- I arrived late and (he)
- I couldn't understand his explanation and (the rest of the class)
- She sings professionally and (her cousin)
- I thought it was ridiculous and (everyone else)
- You shouldn't swear like that and (he)

Practice Test 7

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A spirit of adventure

Explorers and adventurers who (0) in reaching their goal (1) fame and sometimes fortune. Those who fail have little or nothing to (2) for their efforts.

In the 1970s, a young man from England put aside a large part of his monthly (3) for several years (4) he could cycle down the continent of South America. The (5) that he chose meant that he would have to endure extreme weather conditions: the freezing cold of the Andes and the energy-sapping humid climate of the Amazon jungle. The timing of his adventure also (6) that his success (7) on his plans working out perfectly.

Needless to say, it was a disaster. He was (8) by mosquitoes, he almost drowned while crossing a river which had a (9) that was much stronger than he had imagined and he was arrested for not having official (10) to cross a certain part of Peru. He was also (11) for a variety of illnesses in several hospitals. He survived all these setbacks but lost so much weight that he couldn't go on. He was found (12) along a remote mountain path and (13) out soon afterwards.

Two days later he was flown back to Britain, where he was interviewed in a (14) at his local hospital by an interested reporter. When asked about his plans for the future, he answered with a (15) grin that he would like to have another go.

- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 0 | a manage | b succeed | c achieve | d fulfil |
| 1 | a fulfil | b achieve | c manage | d take |
| 2 | a show | b exhibit | c display | d demonstrate |
| 3 | a investment | b salary | c interest | d money |
| 4 | a in order | b because | c so that | d so as |
| 5 | a way | b route | c track | d course |
| 6 | a involved | b included | c meant | d entailed |
| 7 | a trusted | b stated | c based | d depended |
| 8 | a stung | b pecked | c bitten | d pinched |
| 9 | a draught | b drought | c current | d flood |
| 10 | a permit | b permission | c allowance | d pass |
| 11 | a treated | b cured | c healed | d recovered |
| 12 | a staggering | b tiptoeing | c strolling | d ambling |
| 13 | a went | b passed | c knocked | d made |
| 14 | a compartment | b ward | c section | d department |
| 15 | a long | b extended | c deep | d broad |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Rubber

Malaya is (0) *the* largest rubber producer in the world. Rubber is produced by making cuts in the bark of a rubber tree. When the bark (16) cut so are the tubes in the tree (17) carry a milky liquid containing rubber. The rubber is removed by adding a weak acid to (18) milky liquid. A rubber tree can (19) tapped for rubber when it is five years (20) and it produces about three kilos of rubber a year.

The name 'rubber' reflects its first technical application. In 1771, it (21) used to rub (22) pencil marks (23) Priestly, the British chemist famous for his discovery of oxygen. In 1823 Charles Macintosh, a Scottish chemist (24) name has (25) given to a type of coat, used rubber to (26) cloth waterproof.

The most widely known process involving rubber is vulcanisation. In 1839, an American, Charles Goodyear, discovered this process, which is (27) used today. Vulcanised rubber is quite different (28) raw rubber (29) it becomes five times stronger during vulcanisation in which it is heated with sulphur and other ingredients to a temperature of about 150°C. Thousands of different articles in use today (30) partly or wholly made of rubber.

c

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: As you drive faster, you use up more petrol.

economical

The faster you drive, the less economical your car becomes.

- 31 I don't want to wait any longer.

rather

I any longer.

- 32 He could no longer play rugby because of a serious leg injury.

give

A serious leg injury forced rugby.

- 33 Are you in the mood to go skiing?

feel

Do skiing?

- 34 It would be a good idea to stop working so hard.

better

You so much work.

- 35 Laura was ill but she made a very quick recovery.

got

Laura very quickly.

- 36 It won't help if you get upset about your marks.

worth

It upset about your marks.

- 37 Wendy hates it when people criticise her.

objects

Wendy her.

- 38 I think she'd be happy to water your plants for you.

mind

I don't think she your plants for you.

- 39 Some passengers ignored the 'No smoking' signs.

notice

Some passengers of the 'No smoking' signs.

- 40 Their salary is too low for them to survive on.

unable

They are on such a low salary.

D For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

The dark side of The Net

- 0 You either love them or hate them but whichever category ✓
- 00 you belong to it, you cannot fail to be fascinated it
- 41 by them. They are computers and are familiar to the
- 42 most of us as providers of entertainment and information.
- 43 Around five million British households have bought already
- 44 a PC and of those approximately four per cent still are
- 45 on the Internet. The total majority of those who use
- 46 the Internet are responsible people who are
- 47 genuinely interested in it because of they want
- 48 to communicate quickly and effectively. There are,
- 49 however, a small minority who pick up on information
- 50 in an order to create problems for others. For example,
- 51 some users have been visited websites with the sole
- 52 intention of causing embarrassment by using bad language.
- 53 In addition to this, children can pay for their bills
- 54 with their parents' credit cards and play games
- 55 their parents would probably regard as never being
- totally unsuitable.

E For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A life of misery

As well as being places of great (0) *wealth*, big cities are places where (56) exists on a large scale. There are, of course, poor people in country areas but that is where the (57) ends. The poor in urban areas are considered (58) and are more likely to suffer (59) than the poor in rural areas whose situation is regarded as (60) because there are no opportunities for them to improve their lives. This situation (61) the spirits of the urban poor, who begin to accept their (62) conditions as their fate. Eventually, they become spiritually (63) and, unable to face the (64) prospect of a life without hope, turn to drugs or alcohol. At this point, any (65) they are given has little or no meaning.

WEALTHY
POOR

SIMILAR
FAIL
ILL
AVOID
WEAK
LIFE

BREAK
TERROR
ADVISE

Practice Test 8

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Kuala Lumpur: A city of contrasts

Kuala Lumpur is the (0) of Malaysia and probably the city in Asia which has changed most in the (1) fifteen years. It now (2) a relaxed, colonial atmosphere with space age technology, making it (3) among developing Asian cities.

A decade and a half ago Kuala Lumpur was a (4) of colonial buildings surrounded by lush tropical gardens with most of the (5) business being carried out in Hong Kong or Singapore. At that time Kuala Lumpur was in (6) of being left behind and staying on the (7) of second-class cities.

Nowadays Kuala Lumpur is first division material – something which the whole (8) is justifiably proud (9) Despite the remarkable progress that has been (10) , the Malaysians still have a need to be recognised by the whole world. They have made plans to this end and are determined to (11) them through. That is why they are continually seeking to (12) their standard of living by (13) only the very best.

However, the progress has brought with it certain problems. Traffic problems have periodically created an asphyxiating smog which the locals refuse to (14) on and the Western media has developed a habit of putting the city down. In spite of these kinds of problems, the Malaysians are not prepared to (15) their sights one little bit.

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|
| 0 | a leading | b primary | c first | d capital |
| 1 | a latest | b latter | c last | d recent |
| 2 | a shares | b connects | c sticks | d combines |
| 3 | a single | b unique | c separate | d solitary |
| 4 | a collection | b bundle | c bunch | d pack |
| 5 | a region's | b territory's | c place's | d location's |
| 6 | a risk | b emergency | c danger | d jeopardy |
| 7 | a directory | b list | c agenda | d memo |
| 8 | a race | b tribe | c people | d nation |
| 9 | a for | b of | c with | d in |
| 10 | a done | b carried | c taken | d made |
| 11 | a take | b see | c put | d run |
| 12 | a improve | b rise | c lift | d grow |
| 13 | a asking | b persisting | c insisting | d demanding |
| 14 | a mention | b comment | c refer | d discuss |
| 15 | a lower | b lessen | c decrease | d reduce |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A costly mistake

In a court of law, the prosecution (0) *has* to prove that a person has broken the law before he or she can (16) found guilty. However, this is not the case if someone is accused (17) doing something wrong outside the legal system.

David Jones and his wife, Paula, were thrilled when a friend (18) that David should apply (19) a senior post in the international engineering company he worked for. He did so but was puzzled when the company put his interview (20) several times. When he (21) his friend why this had happened, his friend could not give him an answer he was satisfied (22) At this point they wondered (23) was happening to him.

Paula insisted (24) finding out why the company had acted in this manner, so she went to see an uncle who was a policeman. He eventually (25) her that someone (26) reported seeing a car with the same registration number (27) her husband's car being driven away from the scene of a terrorist bombing. This information had (28) put on a computer file to which the company had access. At the time of the bombing David was abroad so it was obvious that a mistake had been (29) Nevertheless, the Joneses could do nothing to change the information and nobody was going to apologise (30) the error.

C

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: 'Why don't you take a few days off work, George,' said Emma.

suggested

Emma suggested (that) George should take a few days off work.

31 'We can't postpone the meeting again!' protested Maria.

put

Maria said that the meeting again.

32 'Martin is the one who lies, not me,' said Elsie.

accused

Elsie liar.

33 We plan to visit Rome next summer.

be

We Rome next summer.

34 'I haven't got any biscuits left,' said Walter.

run

Walter told me that biscuits.

35 Where did she teach mathematics?

tell

Can you mathematics?

36 'Are you an only child, Maxine?' asked the teacher.

any

The teacher asked Maxine brothers or sisters.

37 'Don't criticise your sister, Ashley,' said his mother.

put

Ashley's mother his sister down.

38 'What is your favourite colour, Jan?' asked Sandra.

which

Sandra asked Jan of all.

39 Nobody will be able to remember this scandal in twelve months' time.

completely

This scandal by this time next year.

40 'What was the result of the match?' asked Greg.

who

Greg asked me the match.

D

For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Misunderstandings

- 0 A few weeks ago I was at a friend's front door ✓
 00 when her father walked across the lawn carrying a fruit a
 41 in a bag. While I was waiting for my friend to answer
 42 to the door, I decided to make polite conversation
 43 with her father and said him that he would soon
 44 be enjoying the fruit of his labours. Instead of
 45 smiling, as he usually did, he looked at me rather than
 46 angrily and explained me that it was his fruit and
 47 not his neighbour's. He obviously thought I had
 48 criticised with him for running off with his neighbour's
 49 fruit. He had been heard the word neighbour's, not labours
 50 and had been offended. Fortunately, the misunderstanding
 51 was cleared up and he began to smiling. When
 52 I told my friend that what had happened, she laughed.
 53 No harm had been done but I nearly regretted for speaking
 54 to her own father. From now on, I will play it safe
 55 and talk about the weather in case of there is a
 misunderstanding.

E

For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Animal therapy

One of the most surprising (0) *developments* in the treatment of
 patients in recent years has been the use of pets. In (56)
 cases, even those that are considered the most (57) ,
 patients have shown greater (58) to fight illness and get
 on the road to (59) with the aid of a pet. It has been
 found that young patients can easily build up a (60) with
 a dog, cat or rabbit, which makes them feel less (61)
 during their stay in hospital. Once a week (62)
 take the pets to see the patients who learn how to handle them
 (63) and feed them.

As a result of several experimental schemes, it is now common
 (64) that pets reduce stress and that if visits are
 (65) , patients do not get better so quickly.

DEVELOP
 NUMBER
 HOPE
 DETERMINE
 RECOVER
 FRIEND
 MISERY
 VOLUNTARY
 CARE

KNOW
 CONTINUE

25 CONDITIONALS & WISHES

Zero Conditional, First Conditional,
Second Conditional, Third Conditional,
Wishes, Suppose/What if ...?

Zero Conditional

Use	Form	Examples
This conditional is used to show what always happens in a given situation, eg to express the laws of nature or a general truth.	If + Present Simple, Present Simple	<i>If you put salt on ice, it melts.</i>

Note: In this type of conditional **if** can be replaced by **when**.
*When you **put** salt on ice, it **melts**.*

First Conditional

Use	Form	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refers to a probable or possible present or future result 	If + Present Simple, Future Simple	<i>If we hurry, we will get there in time. (It is quite possible that we will get there in time.)</i>
Variations in the IF clause		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To indicate a present action or future arrangement 	If + Present Continuous	<i>If you are looking for Mary, you will find her downstairs.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To indicate the completion of an action 	If + Present Perfect	<i>If he has lost his keys, he will be angry.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unless 	If + negative verb = unless + affirmative verb	<i>If you don't go now, you will be late. Unless you go now, you will be late.</i>
Variations in the main clause		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To express permission, possibility, command, advice 	can, may, might, must, should + bare infinitive	<i>If he is in trouble, you must help him.</i>

1 Use the first conditional to complete the sentences.

- 1 I've lost your notebook. If I *find* it, I *will give* it to you.
- 2 If you (smoke) in a hospital ward, you (get) into trouble.
- 3 If you (not know) the meaning of a word, you (look) in a dictionary.
- 4 If you (want) to lose weight, you (exercise) more.
- 5 If you (not follow) my advice, you (get) into trouble.
- 6 We (go) for a picnic if the weather (be) nice tomorrow.
- 7 They (believe) you if you (tell) them the truth.
- 8 She (not come) to the party unless you (invite) her.
- 9 If he (not wake) up now, he (be) late for work.
- 10 I (wash) the dishes if you (be) tired.
- 11 Unless you (return) this book to the library tomorrow, you (pay) a fine.
- 12 She (regret) it if she (lie) to me again.
- 13 We (not find) any tickets for the film unless we (go) much earlier.
- 14 If the dog (not stop) barking, our neighbours (call) the police again.
- 15 Sally (not go) to the dentist unless she (be) in terrible pain.
- 16 If the baby (be) a girl, I (call) her Emily.

2 Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect.

- 1 If you (not finish) tidying up by 6 pm, your mother will be angry with you.
- 2 I won't call him if he (still work).
- 3 If it (still rain) tomorrow, I won't go to school.
- 4 You may visit your friend if you (finish) your homework.
- 5 If you (come) with us, we will have to book a bigger table at the restaurant.

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

If you don't stop crying, I won't help you.

Unless you stop crying, I won't help you.

- 1 If you don't stop complaining, I won't let you go out again.
Unless
- 2 We won't be able to sit together if we don't get on the boat now.
Unless
- 3 We won't go swimming if it's not hot.
Unless
- 4 If you don't ask him, he won't help you.
Unless
- 5 If she doesn't go to hospital immediately, her life will be in danger.
Unless

4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 Don't eat so much and you will lose weight.

If you *don't eat so much, you will lose weight.*

2 Come home after midnight and you will find the door locked.

If you

3 Be late again and you will be fired.

If you

4 Stop complaining or I will leave right now.

Unless

5 Go to Paris and you will see the Eiffel Tower.

If you

6 Visit your grandparents more often and they will be happy.

If you

7 Stop driving so dangerously or you will have an accident.

If you

8 Try harder and you will succeed in your exams.

If you

5 Correct the following sentences where necessary. Put a tick (✓) below those which do not need correcting.

1 If you boil water, it will turn to steam.

If you boil water, it turns to steam.

2 Everyone will find out about it if you will tell Maggie.

3 If you climb to the top of the hill, you'll be able to see the sea.

4 I'll wear my summer dress later on unless it doesn't get too cold.

5 If Wendy rings, don't tell her about my promotion.

6 I won't put her in the team unless she will train harder.

Second Conditional

Use	Form	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refers to a present or future imaginary situation 	If + Past Simple, would + bare infinitive	<i>If I had a car, I would drive to school.</i> (I don't have a car. I won't drive to school.)
Variations in the main clause		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To express ability 	could + bare infinitive	<i>If I had a car, I could drive to school.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To express uncertainty 	might + bare infinitive	<i>If he saw a mouse, he might faint.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To give advice 	If I were you, ... I would ...	<i>If I were you, I would see a dentist.</i>

6

Use the second conditional to complete these sentences.

- 1 If I *gave* (give) her a lot of money, she *would spend* (spend) it all at once.
- 2 If she (win) the lottery, she (give) all the money to her children.
- 3 If I (wake up) to find the house on fire, I (call) the fire brigade at once.
- 4 He (not stay) at the Sheraton if he (be) a poor man.
- 5 If I (have) a car, I (drive) to work.
- 6 If I (find) a wallet on the street, I (take) it to the nearest police station.
- 7 Sally (be) very happy if she (be) offered the job.
- 8 If I (be) you, I (consult) a lawyer.
- 9 If I (have) a university degree, I (find) a better job.
- 10 If you (see) a tiger on the street, what (you / do)?

7

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

I don't have a car, so I have to take the bus to work every day.

If I had a car, I wouldn't have to take the bus to work every day.

- 1 Sally doesn't work very hard; that's why she doesn't earn much money.
If she harder, she more money.
- 2 He smokes a lot; that's why he is coughing so much.
If he a lot, he so much.
- 3 She doesn't speak any foreign languages; that's why she can't find a job.
If she a foreign language, she a job.
- 4 I get up late every morning, so I am always late for work.
If I every morning, I late for work.
- 5 He doesn't have much free time, so he doesn't see his friends very often.
If he more free time, he his friends more often.
- 6 I live near my work, so I don't spend much time driving.
If I near my work, I more time driving.
- 7 I don't help him often because he rarely asks for help.
If he for help, I him more often.
- 8 I don't know her address, so I can't write to her.
If I her address, I to her.
- 9 The house isn't big enough, so I can't put you up for the night.
If the house bigger, I you up for the night.
- 10 You won't pass your exams because you don't study hard.
If you harder, you your exams.
- 11 She doesn't travel by plane because she is afraid of heights.
If she of heights, she by plane.
- 12 I can't afford to buy that house because I don't have much money.
If I more money, I to buy that house.
- 13 They play loud music every night; that's why we can't sleep.
If they loud music every night, we
- 14 The food is very salty and I can't eat it.
If the food so salty, I it.
- 15 You can't take any photos because the camera is broken.
If the camera broken, you some photos.

8

Correct the following sentences where necessary. Put a tick (✓) below those which do not need correcting.

- 1 If we had more money, we would be able to rent a bigger house.
..... ✓
- 2 She wouldn't shout so much if you would behave yourself.
.....
- 3 If I was you, I would apologise immediately.
.....
- 4 If you live on a desert island, you would have to learn how to fish.
.....
- 5 I'd buy the coat if I thought it suited me.
.....
- 6 There wouldn't be so much unemployment if people are willing to share their jobs.
.....

Third Conditional

Use	Form	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refers to an imaginary situation in the past 	If + Past Perfect, would + have + past participle	<i>If I had studied more, I would have passed the exam. (I didn't study much, so I didn't pass the exam.)</i>
Variations in the main clause		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To express ability To express uncertainty 	could + have + past participle might + have + past participle	<i>If I had known you were coming, I could have collected you from the airport.</i> <i>If I had been invited to the wedding, I might have bought them a present.</i>

9

Use the third conditional to complete the sentences.

- 1 If you *had paid* (pay) the fine, you *wouldn't have been* (not be) sent to prison.
- 2 If I (know) that dogs were allowed in this hotel, I (bring) mine.
- 3 Sorry! I (not drop by) if you (tell) me you would be busy.
- 4 If I (see) you at the bus stop, I (stop).
- 5 We (go) by air if we (have) enough money.
- 6 I (call) you if I (not lose) your telephone number.
- 7 We (not take) a taxi if the buses (not be) on strike.
- 8 I (take) the children to the beach if it (not rain).
- 9 If I (know) that it would spoil my appetite, I (not eat) it.
- 10 He (not make) so many mistakes if he (be) more careful.
- 11 If he (not be) driving so fast, he (not run) over the cat.
- 12 He (not get) the promotion if (work) so hard.



10

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

Emily didn't wake up early, so she missed the train.

If Emily *had woken* up early, she *wouldn't have missed* the train.

- 1 Sarah wasn't careful and that's why she broke her arm.
If Sarah more careful, she her arm.
- 2 I didn't have much time; that's why I didn't do my homework.
If I more time, I my homework.
- 3 She was worried because her son didn't call to say he would be late.
If her son to say he would be late, she worried.
- 4 I didn't go to the supermarket yesterday, so we have run out of sugar.
If I to the supermarket yesterday, we out of sugar.
- 5 We got lost because we didn't have a map.
If we a map, we lost.
- 6 I didn't ask you to come to the party because I thought that you were sick.
If I you weren't sick, I to come to the party.
- 7 She didn't remember my birthday; that's why she didn't buy me a present.
If she my birthday, she me a present.
- 8 They missed the flight so they had to wait for the next one.
If they the flight, they to wait for the next one.

11

Complete each of the following sentences so that it means the same as the sentence before it.

- 1 The wall fell down because you didn't build it properly.
If you *had built the wall properly, it wouldn't have fallen down.*
- 2 We don't go shopping in town because the bus service is poor.
If the
- 3 She won't take you with her unless you promise to be good.
If you
- 4 We won't finish the job on time without Bob's help.
If Bob
- 5 We didn't have enough money to buy a new carpet because we spent so much on holiday.
If we
- 6 I didn't hear the telephone ring because I was listening to my stereo.
If I

12

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- 1 If she studies hard, she *would* / *will* pass the exam.
- 2 Sheila *didn't damage* / *wouldn't have damaged* the car if she had been more careful.
- 3 If she hadn't quarrelled with him, he *wouldn't throw* / *wouldn't have thrown* her flowers away.
- 4 Unless she *stops* / *doesn't stop* eating now, she will feel sick.
- 5 If I *didn't park* / *hadn't parked* there, I wouldn't have got a fine.
- 6 If you hadn't told her, she *couldn't* / *wouldn't* have been so angry with us.
- 7 If you *came* / *had come* with us to the cinema, you *had enjoyed* / *would have enjoyed* yourself.
- 8 If you *took* / *had taken* more exercise, you would feel much better.

Wishes

Wish is used to talk about a situation or an action we are sorry about.

Use	Form	Examples
Present/Future Reference	wish + past tense	I wish I knew the answer to this question. He wishes he was lying on a beach.
Past Reference	wish + past perfect tense	I wish I hadn't told so many lies. She wishes she hadn't been looking so awful when he called!
Annoyance	wish + would	I wish you would be quiet. I wish my neighbours would stop having so many parties.
Ability	wish + could	They wish they could afford to live in a nicer area. I wish I could have gone to her wedding.

Note: We cannot use **would** when we talk about our own behaviour.

If only has the same meaning as **wish**. It emphasises our desire for a different situation. It cannot be used in the question form.

If only I could go somewhere exotic on holiday.

If only I had passed the exam.

Variations

regret + gerund

It's a pity ...

He **regrets arguing** with his father.

She **regrets not going** to the party.

It's a pity I don't have an older sister.

It's a pity he didn't win the competition.

Choose the correct word or phrase.

- My mother wishes she can / **could** type faster.
- I wish I spoke / had spoken French.
- She wishes she learnt / had learnt Spanish when she was much younger.
- I have put on a lot of weight. I wish I didn't eat / hadn't eaten so much at Christmas.
- If only I could go / went on holiday next summer.
- I wish I bought / had bought that car a year ago.
- James wishes he didn't sleep / hadn't slept on the beach. Now he is sunburnt.
- I wish Mary doesn't drive / didn't drive so fast.
- They wish I came / had come home earlier last night.
- I wish I could come / came with you tomorrow.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- I wish I **had** (have) more money. I would like to buy that camera.
- She wishes she (study) medicine when she had the chance.
- My father wishes he (buy) that house last year. Now it's much more expensive.
- I wish I (study). I can't concentrate.
- I wish you (turn) the volume down a little. I am trying to work.
- Martin wishes I (not tell) everybody his secret.
- I wish I (do) my homework yesterday. Now I'll have to stay up late.
- He wishes he (come) to the party on Saturday.
- Jack regrets (eat) so much. Now he feels awful.
- I wish I (eat) more for breakfast. I'm very hungry now.
- My friend Sally wishes she (be) a singer and not a secretary.
- I wish our neighbours (stop) shouting. I can't sleep.

15 Read the sentences and write wishes, as in the example.

You were rude. You insulted your teacher. You aren't allowed to go on the school trip.

I wish I hadn't been rude. I wish I hadn't insulted my teacher.

I wish I were allowed to go on the school trip.

1 You didn't take the train. You took the bus instead. Now you are stuck in traffic.

I wish

2 You didn't go to the school dance. You stayed at home instead.

I wish

3 You fell asleep on the sofa and you didn't see the match.

I wish

4 You fought with your best friend. You didn't apologise.

I wish

5 You bought some trousers. They are too short for you.

I wish

16 Write sentences for the following situations. Use wish.

1 Sally doesn't have enough money to go on holiday.

Sally wishes she had enough money to go on holiday.

2 I don't have much free time, which is a pity.

3 Mrs Carter doesn't have a good job.

4 Thieves broke into our neighbour's house last night.

5 Ian spent all his money gambling.

6 We bought a house in this area but it's very noisy.

7 He can't control his temper which is very bad for him.

8 He tore up all the letters she had sent him. Now he regrets it.

9 Their car broke down on their way home.

10 She didn't help me and now she feels sorry.

- 1 It's a pity she can't speak a foreign language.
She wishes *she could speak a foreign language.*
- 2 It's a pity they quarrel so often.
They wish
- 3 I regret calling him.
I wish
- 4 It's a pity you don't work harder.
I wish
- 5 It's a pity you can't take a vacation this year.
If only you
- 6 I am sorry I insulted you.
I wish
- 7 I regret selling my house.
I wish
- 8 They are sorry they lost the match.
They wish
- 9 She regrets speaking to him like that.
She wishes she
- 10 It's a pity you can't come to the theatre tonight.
I wish
- 11 I am sorry I lost my car keys.
I wish
- 12 It's a pity you are busy on Saturday.
If only
- 13 It's a pity he didn't manage to pass.
I wish
- 14 It's a pity I don't play tennis.
If only
- 15 I am sorry you missed the plane.
I wish
- 16 I am sorry I forgot to buy a present for your birthday.
If only
- 17 What a pity my dog got lost.
I wish
- 18 I am sorry Julie moved to Spain.
I wish

18 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I wish you *hadn't mentioned* (mention) the trip to Carla. Now she wants to come!
- 2 I wish you (come) into the house in your muddy boots all the time.
Take them off outside.
- 3 We wish we (live) in a faraway place without the pressures of everyday life.
- 4 Alec regrets (accept) the job. The pay and conditions are poor.
- 5 I wish I (see) the look on his face when he discovered the truth.
- 6 I regret (not go) to the party. I hear it was great.
- 7 Graham wishes he (pay) attention during the lesson. Now he can't do his homework.
- 8 I wish you (stop) showing off in front of guests. It's so embarrassing.

Suppose/What if ...?

Use	Examples
Suppose/Supposing (that) means what if . The structure and usage are the same as those of the conditionals.	Suppose/Supposing (that) you are offered the job, will you take it? Suppose/Supposing (that) someone found out ? You would be in trouble. Suppose/Supposing (that) your wallet had been stolen , how would you have got home?

19 Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 Suppose she *saw* (see) you two together, how would she react?
- 2 Suppose they hadn't won the championship, the manager
(lose) his job?
- 3 Suppose there aren't any applicants for the job, how you
(fill) the vacancy?
- 4 Suppose she (apologise), will you two be friends again?
- 5 Supposing he hadn't been willing to lie for you, how you
(explain) the situation?
- 6 Suppose there (be) a storm, where would they have found shelter?



26 VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: mixed

1 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

sell out send for send off send off for send on send out show off
slow down sort out speak up stay out stick out stop off stop over

- 1 On the way to Munich we *stopped over* (spent the night) in Vienna.
- 2 I can't stand the way he (behaves in a boastful manner) in his new car.
- 3 We're running out of petrol so we'll have to (make a short stop) at the next service station.
- 4 As soon as he realised that her temperature had risen, he (asked) a doctor (to come).
- 5 You can buy a key ring that (emits) a loud noise when you whistle.
- 6 These papers are in such a mess that it'll take ages to them (get them back in order).
- 7 Could you please (forward) any mail from my old address to my new one?
- 8 (Reduce speed) before you reach the crossroads.
- 9 Could you (talk more loudly), please? They can't hear you at the back of the hall.
- 10 My parents let me (remain away from home) until midnight but no later.
- 11 I went to get a copy of the new magazine but my local newsagent told me he'd (not got any left because they'd all been bought).
- 12 On seeing the jewellery offer in the newspaper, I (posted a letter asking for) it.
- 13 The letter should arrive by Friday if you it (post) today.
- 14 Harriet (appeared clearly) in the photograph because she was the only one wearing a bright pink blouse.

Phrasal verbs: set, stand

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

set back set in set off (2) set out set up stand by (2) stand for (2)
stand in for stand out stand up stand up for

- 1 I don't usually work in this office. I'm *standing in for* (replacing) Mr Jackson who is sick.
- 2 I'm determined not to (tolerate) her insulting behaviour any longer.
- 3 What do the letters NATO (represent)?
- 4 By (leaving) early, we avoided most of the heavy traffic.
- 5 Someone must have touched the glass and the alarm (caused the alarm to start ringing).
- 6 At night, cyclists should wear clothing that (can be easily seen) in the dark.
- 7 They (act in support of) anyone they believe is being unfairly treated.
- 8 He's (sticking to) what he said and he refuses to apologise.
- 9 As far as I know, the company was (established) about fifty years ago.
- 10 The recent fire at the factory is likely to (delay) production by at least a month.
- 11 You know I'll (support) any decision you make.
- 12 When winter (becomes established) the whole area is covered with snow.
- 13 The scientists didn't (begin the work) to find a cure for this illness but they found one.
- 14 The young scientist's controversial theory (proved to be correct) when it was checked by the world's leading mathematicians.

Phrasal verbs: take (1)

3

Use the verb **take** in its correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

part in back after in ~~on~~ down up to

- 1 Although she was very busy, she didn't hesitate to *take on* (accept) even more responsibilities.
- 2 If Ron hadn't broken his arm, he would have (participated in) the squash tournament.
- 3 The professor's lecture was so complicated that I couldn't (understand) it all
- 4 Did you (write down) everything the lecturer said?
- 5 Young ducks instinctively (like) water.
- 6 Jane (is similar in character and appearance to) her mother; both of them are shy and attractive.
- 7 She insulted me by making that remark and unless she (withdraws) it, I'll never speak to her again.
- 8 As this desk (occupies) so much space, I suggest you should buy a smaller one.

Words easily confused

4

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	certificate diploma subject degree licence	a History was the one <i>subject</i> I was never good at. b I seem to have lost my birth c She has a in architecture from Birmingham University. d This driving is not valid in Canada. e George hasn't been to university but he has a which allows him to work as a physiotherapist.
2	own possess belong	a If it doesn't to you, why is it in your bag? b His one ambition is to a genuine Picasso. c For a person who such skill, his performances are rather poor.
3	pat stroke tap slap	a Wait until the dog calms down before you it. b The person behind me me on my shoulder and asked me what the time was. c She always her son on his head when she is pleased with him. d In the film, she him on the face and he her back.
4	understand realise recognise know	a Although I hadn't seen her for thirty years, I her immediately. b I don't what his name is. c It wasn't until I saw the photograph that I who she was. d In order to the theory, you need to have considerable mathematical ability.
5	advantage benefit exploitation profit	a You shouldn't take of her good nature. b We expect to make a large on the deal. c The of developing countries by the West is nothing new. d Free life insurance is just one of the offered by the company.

6	lively live living alive	a My oldest relative is eighty-eight. b The match will be shown at ten o'clock. c When the rescue team found her, she was still d Having children around the house is exhausting but fun.
7	spoil stain rot pollute	a They the whole evening by insulting everyone they spoke to. b I'm afraid the drink you spilt has the carpet. c As the wooden window frames had we replaced them. d If we go on the rivers all living things in them will die.
8	match game contest event	a I'm not in the mood for a of cards. b After winning a talent, she appeared on national television. c The flower show is the village's most popular annual d Several football had to be postponed due to heavy snow.
9	beat hit knock bang	a Try and the ball a little harder. b I on the door three times but there was no answer. c The ceiling was so low I kept on my head on it. d Their supporters drums at every match they play.
10	top peak crest lid	a There was a crow's nest at the of the tree. b The surfer stayed on the of a wave for a few seconds before falling into the water. c At the of her career, she earned vast sums of money. d He couldn't get the off the biscuit tin.
11	straight direct instant immediate	a They were in contact with the president. b There are no flights to Washington from this airport. c She was so tired that she went to bed. d The residents cut off by the floods are in no danger. e I haven't got enough coffee to make us all a cup.
12	exchange convert switch swap	a We're one of the bedrooms into a study. b I'd like to these jeans for a larger size. c Peter is going to his printer for my scanner. d This painting is a fake. Someone must have it with the original.
13	chop slice grate peel	a Could you some cheese to put on the spaghetti, please? b I can never a potato without wasting half of it. c the parsley on this board, will you? d They'll the ham for you at the supermarket.

Word formation

5 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
blood/bleeding	bleed	.....
resistance	.....	.....
.....	.....	opposing/opposite
.....	breathe	-
.....	confide	.....
.....	.....	reserved
.....	.....	wrecked
.....	represent	.....
.....	inspire	.....
disturbance	.....	.....
.....	personalise	.....
.....	love	.....
loneliness	-	.....
.....	.....	offensive
.....	contribute	.....

Noun	Verb	Adjective
day	-	.....
.....	cook	.....
.....	effect	.....
.....	.....	(dis)organised
.....	-	major
hardness	.....	.....
obligation	.....	.....
.....	.....	entertaining
.....	.....	broad
.....	(mis)understand	.....
.....	correspond	.....
wealth	-	.....
thanks	.....	.....
.....	partner	-

6 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- Jeremy's *rudeness* is something I'm not prepared to put up with. **RUDE**
- Several people fainted at the concert and regained outside the stadium. **CONSCIOUS**
- It came as a shock to hear that Samantha was a **THEFT**
- We live in a rapidly world. **CHANGE**
- After being given a final , Belinda was never late for work again. **WARN**
- I'm not but I'd rather not fly on Friday 13th. **SUPERSTITION**
- Margaret refused my offer. **POLITE**
- The effects of losing one's job can be catastrophic. **PSYCHOLOGY**
- Gareth made a mistake only because he your instructions. **UNDERSTAND**
- Jemima is used to travelling long **DISTANT**

Preposition practice

7 Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

about as on with at by of to in

- I could only describe my meal *at* the hotel *as* awful.
- By the time his lawyer reached the police station, he had already confessed the crime.
- If you're bored your life, do something it.
- Sam always gets excited going long journeys car.
- Only Nigel would be capable doing the job properly.
- We're not used going home so late.
- Please write your answers pen.
- I'm not ashamed what I have done.
- What's the answer question three?
- Don't go in without knocking the door.

Relative Clauses, Time Clauses, Result Clauses, Too/Enough

Relative Clauses

Relative clauses give more information about the subject or object of a sentence. They are introduced by the following relative pronouns:

who for people:

*The book is about a boy **who** is homeless.*

which for things:

*That's the book **which** I read last week.*

whose for possessions:

*The film is about a woman **whose** child runs away.*

when for time:

*It was six o'clock **when** we arrived.*

where for place:

*That's the hotel **where** we were staying.*

why for reason:

*The reason **why** I can't help you is that I'm not well.*

Defining Relative Clauses

- This type of relative clause gives us necessary information. We do not use commas to separate it from the rest of the sentence.
- We can use the word **that** instead of **who** and **which** in this type of clause.
- We do not need to use the relative pronouns **who**, **which** and **that when** they are the object of a defining relative clause.

*The man **who told us about the hotel** was very helpful.*

*This is the boy **who/that** I told you about. We stayed in a hotel **which/that** had an indoor swimming pool.*

*She married the man **(who/that)** she had met on holiday. I saw the film **(which/that)** my sister had recommended.*

Non-Defining Relative Clauses

- This type of relative clause gives us extra information. We use commas to separate it from the rest of the sentence.

*My father, **who travels a lot on business**, has visited many countries.*

Note: We cannot use the word **that** instead of **who** and **which** in this type of clause. We cannot omit the relative pronouns **who** and **which** in non-defining relative clauses

1 Complete the sentences with the correct relative pronoun. If the pronoun can be omitted, use -.

- 1 Did you answer the man *who* offered you the job?
- 2 My mother was born at a time my grandparents were very poor.
- 3 Mrs Jenkins, you see sitting over there, is our new manager.
- 4 That's the man I spoke to the other day.
- 5 The car I bought was a real bargain.
- 6 What is the name of that famous film star we saw the other day?
- 7 The watch I bought last week from your store isn't working.
- 8 Mrs Black, husband died two years ago, took over the company.
- 9 He didn't tell us the reason he resigned.
- 10 The restaurant we usually eat is the best in town.
- 11 The gift my friend gave me for my birthday was really great.
- 12 The film is about a woman son suddenly disappears.
- 13 The supermarket I usually go shopping has a great variety of goods.
- 14 Daniel, has been working for us for ten years, resigned yesterday.
- 15 Where is the parcel I gave you last night?
- 16 Please return the book I lent you.

2 Study the example and rewrite the sentences. Remember to add commas if the clause is non-defining.

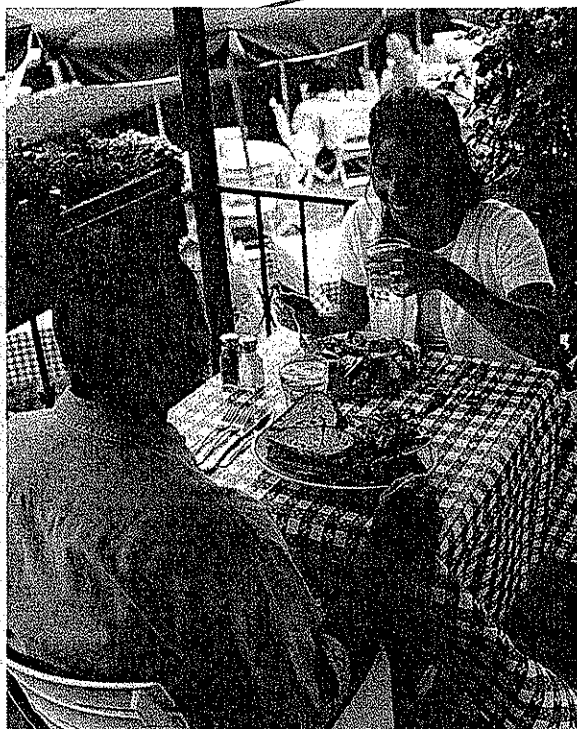
Tom is very happy. His sister won the tennis championship.

Tom, whose sister won the tennis championship, is very happy.

- 1 Mrs Evans resigned yesterday. Her husband is the mayor.
.....
- 2 I met a woman last week. Her father is a famous novelist.
.....
- 3 I have to buy a present for my father. His birthday is tomorrow.
.....
- 4 The woman gave you some money. Her father left her a fortune.
.....
- 5 Brian came with me to the video club. His girlfriend has lovely hair.
.....
- 6 We saw the film yesterday. It's reviews were very good.
.....
- 7 That's the director. His film was a great success.
.....
- 8 They have elected a Prime Minister. His goal is to help the poor.
.....

3 Find the mistake and correct the sentences.

- 1 She married a man her parents didn't approve of him.
She married a man her parents didn't approve of......
- 2 I really like the car I bought it last year.
.....
- 3 Mr Fowler who you met him yesterday is a famous author.
.....
- 4 The singer you admire her so much is only sixteen years old.
.....
- 5 The vacuum cleaner that you bought it is faulty.
.....
- 6 The story that I told you it is untrue.
.....
- 7 That's the place when I grew up.
.....
- 8 Jane often remembers the time which she met her husband.
.....
- 9 Those children who they are playing football go to my school.
.....
- 10 The kidnapper who he escaped from prison last week was arrested today.
.....



- 4 Join the sentences using a relative clause, as in the examples.
Remember to add commas if the clause is non-defining.

The box is very heavy. It contains photo albums.

The box which / that contains photo albums is very heavy.

Jenny is a successful lawyer. Her husband is unemployed.

Jenny, whose husband is unemployed, is a successful lawyer.

- 1 Samantha has passed her driving test. She doesn't like taking the bus.
- 2 Many people earn a lot of money. They work overtime.
- 3 Martha is her only daughter. She is only ten years old.
- 4 Daniel gave me the money. I lent it to Peter.
- 5 The Four Seasons Hotel is closing down. I stayed there for a week.
- 6 That's the policeman. I trusted him with my problem.
- 7 The book is on the table. I have been looking for it.
- 8 John's father arranged our honeymoon. He owns a travel agency.
- 9 Jane is my cousin. You met her last night.
- 10 I will inform the police about the woman. She stole my bike.
- 11 Last summer was a wonderful time for me. The weather was hot then.
- 12 She avoided telling me the truth. I really can't explain it.
- 13 The hotel is very big. We stayed there last year.
- 14 The offices of Go Travel are next to the town hall. Their holidays are really good.

Time Clauses

Time clauses are introduced with the following time expressions: *when, as soon as, after, by the time, until/till, before, the moment, while, once.*

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ In order to express future time after a time expression, a present tense must be used.■ When it is necessary to emphasise the completion of an action, the present perfect tense is used.■ After while the present continuous can be used.	<p>I'll send you a postcard as soon as I arrive.</p> <p>I won't be able to tell you the amount until I've added up all these bills.</p> <p>I'll be lying in the sun while you are working.</p>

Note: Never use *will* in a time clause.

5 Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets into an appropriate tense.

- 1 We'll confirm your booking after we *have heard* (hear) from head office.
- 2 I'll tell you when I (be) ready.
- 3 By the time we (get) there, the match will be over.
- 4 While you (enjoy) yourself at the party, I'll be studying.
- 5 I'll give her the medicine before she (go) to bed.
- 6 You'll feel better once you (have) a rest.

6 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

You will finish writing this composition. Then you can go out. (when)

When you finish/have finished writing this composition, you can go out.

- 1 We will find Denise. Then we will call you. (as soon as)
- 2 John will resign. Then he will look for another job. (after)
- 3 I will wash the dishes, but first I will eat a sandwich. (after)
- 4 I will get back late. It will be 8 pm. (by the time)
- 5 I will do my homework. Then I will go out. (until)
- 6 I will arrive in Paris this evening. Then I will send you a postcard of the Eiffel Tower. (when)
- 7 He will graduate from university. Then he will find a job. (after)
- 8 I will be studying hard. You will be out enjoying yourself. (while)

Result Clauses

So and **such** + **that** are used to show how one action or state leads to another action or state.

Form	Examples
so	It was hot, so I opened the window.
so + adjective/adverb + that	He speaks so fast that nobody understands him.
such + adjective + noun + that	He is such a good boy that everybody loves him. They were such efficient workers that we gave them a pay rise.
so + many/few + that	There were so many people that we couldn't find a seat.
so + much/little + uncountable noun + that	He earns so much money that he spends it without thinking.

Note: **Such** is never used with **much/many**. We say: **such** + **a lot of** + plural/uncountable noun + **that**.
There was **such a lot of traffic that** I was late.

- 1 Mary is *so* reliable that you can always trust her with a secret.
- 2 It was bad weather that our holiday was a disaster.
- 3 My father has much money that he doesn't need to work any more.
- 4 The film was boring that we left in the middle.
- 5 There were many people at the concert that we couldn't find a seat.
- 6 My son was ill that we took him to hospital.
- 7 He is famous actor that he earns a lot of money.
- 8 Mr Brown is strict boss that nobody likes him.
- 9 The food was salty that I couldn't eat it.
- 10 Dorothy drives dangerously that she is likely to have an accident.
- 11 Emily has got little time that she is always in a hurry.
- 12 It was warm day that everybody went swimming.
- 13 It was interesting book that I couldn't put it down.
- 14 Paula has got beautiful eyes that John fell for her the moment he saw her.
- 15 It was awful food that nobody ate it.
- 16 I didn't expect it to be long way to the airport.

Mary is very sensitive. She often gets upset.

Mary is so sensitive that she often gets upset.

- 1 Mrs Jones is a very good teacher. Everybody likes her.
.....
- 2 This neighbourhood is very noisy. I think we should move house.
.....
- 3 This is a very expensive car. We can't afford to buy it.
.....
- 4 The weather was really awful. We didn't go camping.
.....
- 5 The sea was very cold. We couldn't swim in it.
.....
- 6 Jim is an excellent employee. He should be promoted.
.....
- 7 It was a really crowded beach. We couldn't find a place to sunbathe.
.....
- 8 The journey was very long. We all got very tired.
.....
- 9 The meal was delicious. We ate everything.
.....
- 10 The exercise was very difficult. Nobody could do it.
.....
- 11 It was a very funny joke. Everybody laughed.
.....
- 12 I ate a lot of chocolate. I felt sick.
.....

9 Study the example and rewrite the sentences.

The film was so boring that we left before the end.
It was such a boring film that we left before the end.

- 1 The food was so hot that we couldn't eat it.
.....
- 2 The train was so slow that it took us longer than we expected to get to Paris. .
.....
- 3 The party was so good that we left at four in the morning.
.....
- 4 The man is so rich that he can spend as much money as he wants.
.....
- 5 She drives so carelessly that she always has accidents.
.....
- 6 She runs so fast that I can't keep up with her.
.....
- 7 The weather was so hot that we all went swimming.
.....
- 8 Her performance was so good that the actress held the audience spellbound.
.....
- 9 The scenery was so beautiful that I couldn't help looking out of the window.
.....
- 10 The pain was so bad that he couldn't move.
.....
- 11 The instructions were so confusing that all the students complained.
.....
- 12 The ship was so old that we didn't want to go on the cruise.
.....

Too/Enough

Use	Form	Examples
<p>■ Too is used to indicate more than is necessary or wanted.</p>	<p>too + adjective/adverb + (for sb) + full infinitive</p> <p>Too can also be followed by a quantifier.</p>	<p>The meat was too tough for me to eat.</p> <p>She was driving too fast to be able to stop at the traffic lights.</p> <p>There were too few people at the meeting.</p>
<p>■ Enough is used to indicate as much/many as is necessary or wanted.</p>	<p>adjective/adverb + enough + (for sb) + full infinitive</p> <p>Enough can also be followed by a noun.</p>	<p>The meat wasn't tender enough for me to eat.</p> <p>She wasn't driving slowly enough to be able to stop at the traffic lights.</p> <p>There weren't enough people at the meeting.</p>

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- 1 The nightclub was overcrowded.
There were *too many people in the nightclub*.
- 2 The book is too long for me to translate in just three months.
The book isn't
- 3 That shelf is too high for me to reach.
That shelf isn't
- 4 If he had had more time, he would have finished the job.
There was too
- 5 The plane couldn't land because the runway was too short.
The runway wasn't
- 6 His reflexes are too slow for him to become a top class player.
His reflexes

Study the examples and rewrite the sentences.

The tea was so hot that we couldn't drink it.

The tea was too hot for us to drink.

The car was so big that we could all get in it.

The car was big enough for us all to get in.

- 1 The concert was so long that we couldn't stay till the end.
.....
- 2 The car was so expensive that we couldn't buy it.
.....
- 3 Laura was so tired that she couldn't come with us to the cinema.
.....
- 4 The coffee was so sweet that she couldn't drink it.
.....
- 5 My father was so angry with me that he wouldn't talk about it.
.....
- 6 The man is so rich that he can buy anything he wants.
.....
- 7 The sofa is so comfortable that I can sleep on it all night.
.....
- 8 The film has so many violent scenes that little children shouldn't watch it.
.....
- 9 Betty was so lazy that she wouldn't find a job.
.....
- 10 The house was so big that all ten of us could live there.
.....

28 VOCABULARY PRACTICE

Phrasal verbs: take (2)

1 Use the word **take** in the correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

in off (4) on over up

- 1 Sales of this computer game have *taken off* (suddenly increased) recently.
- 2 Our plane (left) on time.
- 3 How could you have been (deceived) by such a ridiculous story?
- 4 Martin decided to (have a break of) a few days and go to his country cottage.
- 5 We're not (employing) any new workers at the moment.
- 6 You can't (start playing) football at your age! Why not try golf?
- 7 Edwina expects to (assume control of) her father's company when he retires.
- 8 Roger can (imitate) the headmaster so well that he's even made a phone call and pretended to be him.

Phrasal verbs: mixed

2 Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct form to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

tell off ~~think over~~ throw out try on try out watch out wear off
wear out work out (2) work up wrap up

- 1 I'll give you my answer to the proposal when I've *thought* (considered) it *over* carefully.
- 2 Mr White (scolded) his son for coming into the house with muddy boots.
- 3 I tried to find an answer to the problem but I just couldn't (solve) it
- 4 ! (Be careful!) There are a lot of pickpockets around here.
- 5 Could I (put on) this jacket (to see if it fits), please?
- 6 I hope everything (proves successful) for you in your new career.
- 7 Don't buy the motorbike before you've had a chance to (test) it
- 8 As long as the drug doesn't (stop being effective), the patient won't be in pain.
- 9 For the first few days my new job really (made) me (very tired).
- 10 Make sure you (dress warmly) before you go out in this cold weather.
- 11 It wasn't a tough training session. I didn't even (produce) a sweat (through physical exercise).
- 12 You haven't (got rid of) my old comics, have you?

Phrasal verbs: turn

3

Use the verb **turn** in the correct form together with the particles below to replace the words and phrases in brackets in the following sentences. The first one has been done for you.

down (2) off on up (2) away out (2)

- 1 The factory *turns out* (produces) only one hundred cars a year; that's why they are so expensive.
- 2 Please (switch off) the lights when you leave.
- 3 Why does he always (arrive) ten minutes late?
- 4 The radio is on too loud. (Reduce) the volume a little.
- 5 It would be foolish to (refuse) such a generous offer.
- 6 Don't (increase the volume on) the stereo You'll wake the baby.
- 7 I'm responsible for (starting up) the ovens at the bakery.
- 8 All the fans who didn't have tickets were (refused admission) at the gates.

Words easily confused

4

Use the words on the left to complete the sentences on the right. Make sure the words are in the correct form. Use each word at least once.

1	protection conservation preservation maintenance	a They're members of the Royal Society for the <i>Protection</i> of Birds. b As the house is both old and large, the costs are extremely high. c The WWF is concerned with the of endangered species. d Without , oil will run out within a hundred years.
2	end bottom bed base	a Apparently, there is a lot of treasure lying on the sea b There must be several unknown species living at the of the ocean. c The statue stands on a marble d Many people have predicted the of the world. e We climbed until we reached the of the tunnel.
3	past previous former earlier	a As a(n) prime minister, she has many important contacts. b We should have caught a(n) flight. c How much experience have you had? d She's not been well for the few days.
4	shut turn off close draw	a Talks are going smoothly and we hope to the deal this evening. b the radio for a moment. c Please the door on the way out. d When it gets dark, the curtains. e I was asked why I wanted to my bank account.
5	total whole complete	a It took three weeks to repair the robot. b They won't stop until the work is c The number of students present is ninety-one. d I'll give you £50 for the lot. e These volumes contain the works of Shakespeare. f You must tell the truth.

6	direction suggestion proposal indication	a The on the bottle state that you must wear gloves when handling the contents. b She never gives any of her true feelings. c His was that I should consult a lawyer. d She's received three of marriage.
7	average standard regular normal	a Under circumstances, a loan would be easy to get. b The salary for managers in this company is £25,000 a year. c Being a politician, she doesn't have a(n) routine. d Both screwdrivers and spanners come in sizes.
8	worry concern alarm anxiety care	a Ministers have expressed their about the economy. b Don't panic! There's no cause for c She wanders around as if she didn't have a(n) in the world. d Now that I've saved enough money for the holiday, I've one less on my mind. e He suffers from attacks before important examinations.
9	location site point spot	a This looks like a great for a picnic. b The film was shot on , not in a studio. c I think we've reached the of no return. d Take a hard hat if you're going to the building e You can't go in there because it's an archaeological f Nobody knows the exact of the buried treasure.
10	howl buzz roar grunt hiss squeak bark	a We heard the wolves further up the mountainside. b I'm sure I heard a mouse downstairs. c The lion as the trainer cracked his whip. d When he laughs, he like a pig. e It was so quiet that we could hear the bees around the flowers. f Ian's pet snake as I approached its cage. g My dog only when the doorbell rings.
11	between among within	a If I had to choose these two songs, I'd choose the first one. b They'd finished their work a week. c How are we going to spot her all these people?
12	hatch migrate nest hunt	a Owls at night. b Many birds to Africa when the weather gets cold. c The eggs should any day now. d Woodpeckers in holes.
13	yawn sigh yell sneeze	a Being bored, she couldn't help b Archie with relief when he heard he'd passed the exam. c Don't at me just because you lost. d I'm allergic to cats and start whenever I'm in a room with one.

Word formation

5 Complete the following table. Use prefixes where possible.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
record/recording	<i>record</i>	.....
.....	romanticise	.....
.....	.....	long
.....	heighten	.....
.....	humour	.....
.....	.....	moving
.....	sense	.....
energy	energise	.....
.....	.....	performing
.....	fool	.....
.....	inconvenience	.....
.....	.....	(over)populated
.....	-	(un)important
.....	brighten	.....

Noun	Verb	Adjective
.....	.....	(in)attentive
.....	.....	(non)existent
.....	signify	.....
interference	.....	.....
.....	.....	refreshing
.....	advertise	.....
.....	.....	permissible
.....	.....	preventive
value	.....	.....
.....	.....	equipped
.....	retire	.....
.....	deliver	undelivered
.....	.....	astonished/-ing
product/-ivity/ producer/ production	.....	.....

6 Use the word in capitals at the end of each sentence to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence.

- What is the *central* theme in her new book?
- The high cost of put me off buying such a large house.
- With all your skills, you should find a job quite easily.
- Please don't eat so
- Robert opened the door and walked into the room.
- A new travel has opened in town.
- Blond hair and blue eyes are two of Finnish people.
- Should you require any, ring the bell.
- As we live in an world, there is bound to be injustice.
- There's a pan in the cupboard next to the cooker.

CENTRE
MAINTAIN
SECRETARY
NOISE
CAUTION
AGENT
CHARACTER
ASSIST
PERFECTION
FRY

Preposition practice

7 Use the prepositions below only where necessary to complete the sentences which follow.

of on by to out of in against for with at into

- As our production methods are *out of* date we must decide *on* a more modern process.
- The course consists lectures, educational visits and practical work.
- The ones we have stock are similar those but they weren't made Japan.
- How can we protect our house flooding?
- This method is not familiar him so don't be angry him making a mistake.
- A gallon is equal about four and a half litres.
- She's been work for five years. fact, she hasn't had a job since leaving school.
- I'm surprised you. I thought you knew better.
- the one hand, it is exciting, but the other hand, it is dangerous.
- present, she is doing some research artificial intelligence.
- last Saturday, our team played the league champions and we only lost three points.
- How far can you run five minutes?

29 CLAUSES (2)

Purpose Clauses, In Case, Reason Clauses, Clauses of Contrast & Concession, Participle Clauses, Not Only... But Also

Purpose Clauses

Purpose clauses explain why someone does something. We use the following words and expressions to introduce them.

Form	Examples
for + noun/gerund	<i>I went to the bakery for some bread.</i>
full infinitive	<i>I went to the supermarket to buy some things.</i>
in order to + bare infinitive so as to + bare infinitive	<i>I studied hard in order to pass the exams. I called him so as to invite him to my party.</i>
so that + subject + can/will (present/future reference) so that + subject + could/would (past reference)	<i>I will call you so that you won't forget our appointment. I left the door open so that he could get in.</i>

Join the sentences using the words in brackets.

- Martha has gone to the USA. She intends to study Chemistry. (to)
Martha has gone to the USA to study Chemistry.
- Mum has prepared a large meal. We can all have enough to eat. (so that)
- Ben took a taxi. He didn't want to be late for the meeting. (in order not to)
- Our teacher spoke loudly. He wanted all of us to hear. (so that)
- Jane has had her hair dyed. She wanted to be in fashion. (so as to)
- Mum gave me some money. I wanted to buy a CD. (for)

In Case

Use	Examples
In case is used to express the idea that one action is carried out because another <i>might</i> occur.	<i>I'll mention the meeting in case he has forgotten about it. (because he might have forgotten about it)</i>
In case is followed by a verb in a present or past tense.	<i>Give me a key in case I get home first. I took some warm clothes in case the weather turned bad.</i>

2 Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 I'll buy some extra food in case there *is* (be) a strike.
- 2 I'll give you my address now/in case I (not see) you before you leave.
- 3 I bought some suntan lotion in case I (get) the chance to do some sunbathing.
- 4 Take a torch in case you (need) to go down into the cellar.
- 5 I showed her how the photocopier works in case she (want) to use it.

3 Rewrite the sentences, using *in case*.

- 1 I'm taking a map with me. I might get lost.
I'm taking a map with me *in case I get lost*.
- 2 Sally always takes her umbrella because it may rain.
Sally always takes
- 3 It might be cold there, so take some warm clothes with you.
Take some warm clothes
- 4 The hotel might have a swimming pool, so take your swimming costume.
Take your swimming costume
- 5 Alice bought a torch. It might have been dark at the camp.
Alice bought a torch
- 6 She thought there might be a lot of traffic, so she left early.
She left early

Reason Clauses

Clauses of reason are used to express why something happens or has happened. We use the following words and expressions to introduce them.

Form	Examples
because/as/since + clause	<i>The defendant was not convicted because/as/since the prosecution had no conclusive evidence.</i>
because of/due to + noun	<i>We couldn't reach our destination because of/due to thick fog.</i>
the reason for + noun	<i>The reason for his absence was unclear.</i>
the reason (why) + clause	<i>The reason (why) he was absent was unclear.</i>

4 Join the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 We took a short cut. We wanted to get home early. (because)
We took a short cut because we wanted to get home early.
- 2 She couldn't buy the shoes. She didn't have enough money. (as)
.....
- 3 The traffic was heavy. She was late for her meeting. (because of)
.....
- 4 She was tired. She had to go home. (since)
.....
- 5 An accident happened. Her carelessness caused it. (due to)
.....
- 6 The reason for her bad behaviour was obvious (why).
.....

Clauses of Contrast & Concession

Clauses of contrast and concession are used to express a contrast in a sentence. We use the following words and expressions to introduce them.

Form	Examples
but	<i>I bought some trousers, but I didn't find a top to go with them.</i>
however	<i>He eats a lot. However, he isn't fat.</i>
while/whereas	<i>This book is interesting while/whereas that book is boring.</i>
although + clause even though + clause	<i>Although she studied hard, she didn't pass the exam. Even though she studied hard, she didn't pass the exam.</i>
despite + noun/gerund in spite of + noun/gerund	<i>Despite his illness/being ill, he went to work. In spite of his wealth/his being rich, he is very mean with money.</i>

Note: When **despite** or **in spite of** are followed directly by a gerund, the subject must be the same in both clauses.

They misbehaved but the teacher didn't punish them.

***Despite misbehaving**, they were not punished by the teacher.*

The subject does not have to be the same, however, when there is a possessive adjective or object pronoun before the gerund.

*Despite **their/them** misbehaving, the teacher didn't punish them.*

5 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the word given.

- Although it was snowing, we went out. **SNOW**
Despite *the snow, we went* out.
- Despite hating football, she watched the match. **BUT**
She hates the match.
- Although it was very hot, he wore a coat. **OF**
In spite he wore a coat.
- He lost his job. However, he wasn't upset. **LOSS**
Despite he wasn't upset.
- Even though Ruth is a very good student, her brother is lazy. **WHEREAS**
Ruth is a very good student, lazy.
- In spite of our leaving early, we missed the train. **WE**
Although we missed the train.
- Even though she was insensitive, she had a lot of friends. **HER**
In spite she had a lot of friends.
- Though he was well qualified for the job, they decided not to employ him. **BEING**
Despite for the job, they decided not to employ him.

Participle Clauses

Form	Examples
Participle clauses are formed with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ a present participle. ■ a past participle. ■ a perfect participle. 	<i>Looking through the window, I thought I saw something move. Seen from a distance, the insect looked just like a leaf. Having used all the paint, we went to get some more.</i>

Note: The subject of the participle clause and the main clause must be the same.

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To replace a relative pronoun + verb 	<p>The man who is speaking at the moment is my uncle. The man speaking at the moment is my uncle.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To replace a clause of reason (Because I/he/we ...) 	<p>Because I can't speak German, I ask Rudi to translate for me. Not being able to speak German, I ask Rudi to translate for me.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To replace while + past continuous 	<p>While I was digging in the garden, I came across some old coins. Digging in the garden, I came across some old coins.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To replace after/because/since/etc + present/past perfect 	<p>After she has chosen the colour scheme for her room, she will buy the paint. Having chosen the colour scheme for her room, she will buy the paint.</p> <p>As he had had a long holiday, Gerry felt quite refreshed. Having had a long holiday, Gerry felt quite refreshed.</p>

6 Rewrite each of the following sentences with a participle clause.

- 'A Christmas Carol', which was written in 1843, is one of Charles Dickens' most famous novels.
'A Christmas Carol', *written in 1843, is one of Charles Dickens' most famous novels.*
- While Christine was walking through the park, she imagined what she would do if she won the lottery.
.....
- The woman who is talking to the headmaster is my wife.
.....
- Because I knew the traffic would be heavy, I decided to go by train.
.....
- After we had made the arrangements for the party, we had lunch.
.....
- Since I hadn't seen the film, I couldn't comment on it.
.....

Not Only... But Also

Use	Examples
<p>Not only... but also is used to introduce additional information. When it is used at the beginning of the sentence it is followed by a verb in the question form.</p>	<p>Carrie has a full time job. She also does voluntary work. Not only does Carrie have a full time job but she also does voluntary work.</p>

7 Join the following pairs of sentences using **Not only... but also**.

- They spent a month in Bali. They also spent a month in the Bahamas.
Not only did they spend a month in Bali but they also spent a month in the Bahamas.
- She owns a large flat in the city. She has a villa in the country too.
.....
- She had been spying on the foreign diplomat. She had also given him false information.
.....
- The car is very fast. It is safe too.
.....
- It was very cold. There was also a strong wind.
.....

Use of English Practice Tests 9 & 10

Practice Test 9

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer **A**, **B**, **C** or **D** best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

A young contender

(0), bowls is described (1) being a (2) which is played by senior citizens, so the announcement that a ten-year-old will be taking part (3) the National Bowls Championship has come as a shock to many players.

At the age of five, Ean Morton (4) his football boots for a set of bowls which once (5) to his great-grandmother. He (6) to bowls at once but it (7) have been easy for Ean because he had to play against people who could take (8) of his inexperience. (9) of the fact that Ean did not achieve (10) success at bowls, he refused to allow it to (11) his enjoyment of it.

Now, five years later, Ean is more than a match for most of his opponents. He is very excited (12) playing in the tournament but admits that he doesn't really (13) what to expect. His father, who will also be playing in the Championship, is more optimistic. He believes that Ean will reach the (14) and is prepared to (15) by him every step of the way.

- | | | | | |
|----|------------------|------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 0 | a Conservatively | b Traditionally | c Customarily | d Practically |
| 1 | a from | b with | c as | d for |
| 2 | a match | b contest | c game | d tournament |
| 3 | a to | b on | c for | d in |
| 4 | a swapped | b converted | c switched | d bartered |
| 5 | a owned | b belonged | c possessed | d effected |
| 6 | a liked | b stood | c set | d took |
| 7 | a mustn't | b can't | c oughtn't | d shouldn't |
| 8 | a benefit | b advantage | c profit | d gain |
| 9 | a Despite | b Though | c However | d In spite |
| 10 | a sudden | b straight | c direct | d instant |
| 11 | a spoil | b rot | c stain | d damage |
| 12 | a for | b from | c about | d with |
| 13 | a know | b realise | c recognise | d understand |
| 14 | a peak | b top | c summit | d crest |
| 15 | a support | b set | c stand | d back |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Bamboo

Bamboos are the (0) *fastest* growing plants in the world. Even in countries like England, (16) the plant does not grow naturally, (17) is known to be capable (18) increasing in height by fifteen centimetres in just twenty-four hours.

Such rapid growth is necessary because the plant has only eight to twelve weeks before the dry weather sets (19) to go (20) ground level to its maximum height which may (21) as much as fifteen metres.

Bamboos are quite demanding. Not (22) do they need a great deal of water in (23) to grow so quickly (24) they also need deep soil so that their roots can stay warm at colder times of the year. This means the gardener (25) make sure the ground is not (26) stony for the plant to grow on.

(27) bamboos used to be quite rare in British gardens, they have recently gained popularity with British gardeners. This is because they are green all the year round, (28) are no insects in Britain which destroy them and they can grow (29) close together that not even a cat is thin (30) to squeeze through.



For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: We can't put all the luggage into one car.

too

There is too much luggage to put into one car.

31 Carolyn doesn't remind me of her mother at all.

take

Carolyn her mother at all.

32 Eddie is still too weak to get out of bed.

not

Eddie to get out of bed yet.

33 Although he was very wealthy, he lived in a small cottage.

spite

In , he lived in a small cottage.

34 It was a mistake to go out in summer clothes.

should

I warm clothes when I went out.

35 Studying hard will improve your chances of passing the exam.

unless

Your chances of passing the exam will hard.

36 Since I don't know him, I can't tell you what he's like.

met

Not , I can't tell you what he's like.

37 He both acts and sings.

only

Not he also sings.

38 It's not a good idea to buy such a big car.

you

If I buy such a big car.

39 They only stayed because you apologised immediately.

if

They would not apologised immediately.

40 Despite feeling tired, we decided to leave early.

although

We decided to set tired.

D For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Neighbours from hell

- 0 The BBC has just announced that it will be showing ✓
 00 a new series called *Neighbours from hell* from by the by
 41 beginning of next month. Since it is being thought that
 42 many citizens have to stand up for their neighbours' rude
 43 behaviour either because they do not have enough of
 44 evidence for the police to act or they are too much frightened
 45 of their neighbours, the show is likely to be popular.
 46 Although the first episode shows the case of two elderly
 47 men who have had an argument about a water supply
 48 last year. As a result of this, one of the men threatened
 49 the other. Despite of the fact that threats had been
 50 made, the police could not do nothing until they
 51 had proof that the law had been broken. The man
 52 who had been threatened decided that he should to get
 53 the evidence required so he went to home, got out his
 54 video camera and waited for his neighbour to carry out
 55 his threat. When his neighbour reached to his garden
 and started to destroy his vegetables he secured the
 evidence the police needed.

E For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

No gain without pain

In these days of (0) *economic* hardship it is very difficult for
 charities to raise money as ordinary appeals are (56)
 In order to help, (57) newspapers regularly organise
 expeditions in the hope that (58) readers will make
 large (59) to the cause. On one such expedition,
 journalists acting as a well-known newspaper's (60)
 climbed Everest. Detailed reports of how (61) became
 more difficult during the climb appeared in the newspaper together with
 (62) accounts of how each member of the team was
 coping (63) with the experience. As the climb
 progressed, readers found the (64) to donate money. It
 appeared that they felt a greater (65) to give money to
 the appeal as the climbers' suffering increased.

ECONOMY
EFFECT
DAY
WEALTH
CONTRIBUTE
REPRESENT
BREATH

PERSON
PSYCHOLOGY
INSPIRE
OBLIGE

Practice Test 10

A For questions 1–15, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Flora and fauna at risk

(0) many leading zoologists and botanists have expressed their (1) about the (2) of endangered species, the current (3) are that most of the measures taken to (4) these species against extinction have had only a limited effect.

From the (5) of the sea to mountain slopes, tens of thousands of species have become extinct in the (6) 300 years. (7) these species thousands have died out even before they have been (8) It is no wonder then that many experts believe that mankind has reached the (9) of no return.

As well as hunting, the greatest threat to plants and animals is the destruction of rainforests. On (10) , an area of forest the size of Switzerland is destroyed every two and a half to three years. Consequently, (11) regions are cleared every month which means that animals have nothing to eat, birds have nowhere to (12) and plants nowhere to grow.

Now CITES (Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species) has (13) on the responsibility of getting 800 species of animals and plants (14) from international trade and another 23,000 placed under strict controls. This is a step in the right direction, but should CITES and other organisations fail, the (15) of the wolf and noises made by other animals may only be heard on tape or CD in future.

- | | | | | |
|----|----------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 0 | a Nevertheless | b However | c Despite | d Although |
| 1 | a concern | b worry | c care | d bother |
| 2 | a maintenance | b preservation | c upkeep | d support |
| 3 | a directions | b indications | c recommendations | d proposals |
| 4 | a maintain | b shield | c conserve | d protect |
| 5 | a bed | b foot | c base | d bottom |
| 6 | a earlier | b former | c past | d previous |
| 7 | a From | b Between | c Within | d Among |
| 8 | a found out | b discovered | c determined | d invented |
| 9 | a site | b location | c spot | d point |
| 10 | a average | b normal | c standard | d typical |
| 11 | a total | b full | c entire | d complete |
| 12 | a fly | b grow | c nest | d flock |
| 13 | a seen | b turned | c worked | d taken |
| 14 | a avoided | b banned | c stopped | d prevented |
| 15 | a grunt | b roar | c squeak | d howl |

B For questions 16–30, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The Ozone Layer

The ozone layer, (0) *which* consists (16) a thin band of ozone gas high above the Earth's surface, is extremely important to life on our planet. (17) is this thin layer of gas that protects life on Earth (18) the harmful, ultra-violet light which comes from the sun.

Since the 1960s, scientists have observed 'holes' in the ozone layer and done research (19) the phenomenon. (20) has caused these 'holes' is chemicals called CFCs being released into the atmosphere. These chemicals, which (21) destroy huge amounts of ozone, enter the atmosphere when refrigerators are destroyed and when aerosol sprays are used.

The results of the damage which has been (22) to the ozone layer have been known (23) a number of years. Ultra-violet light kills plant life so neither animals (24) humans will have anything to eat. There will also be less oxygen and skin cancer will become more common. Nowadays, fridges and sprays are not normally made with harmful CFCs in them, but, because (25) are so many old fridges being thrown (26) all the time, scientists have not been (27) to stop the destruction.

If the prediction (28) most of the ozone layer (29) have been destroyed in fifty years' time comes true, humans will (30) they had never heard of CFCs.

C

For questions 31–40, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example at the beginning.

Example: What made her refuse my offer?

turn

Why did she turn down my offer?

31 His headache was so bad that he had to lie down.

had

He that he had to lie down.

32 She thinks it's a pity she didn't complain to the management.

regrets

She complaint to the management.

33 You really should be doing some form of exercise.

about

It's up some form of exercise.

34 In my opinion, worrying about it won't do any good.

point

I don't think worrying about it.

35 Peter is still trying to contact the landlady.

able

Peter contact the landlady yet.

36 He's a professional footballer, isn't he?

professionally

He he?

37 I'm sorry I didn't accept her offer of a job.

only

If down her offer of a job.

38 How did she manage to get Julia to come to the party?

succeeded

I wonder Julia to come to the party.

39 I'd like to see if they fit me.

try

May please?

40 It's a shame you went to the opening ceremony without your camera.

wish

I some photographs of the opening ceremony.

D For questions 41–55, read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) in the margin on the right. If a line has a word which should not be there, underline the word and write it in the margin on the right. There are two examples at the beginning (0 and 00).

Walt Disney World

- 0 There are few places in the world that children would ✓
 00 like to visit them more than Walt Disney World in Orlando. *them*
 41 With this in mind, I have decided that it is about one
 42 time I have planned a holiday there. I have already read
 43 about the park and it sounds like fascinating. It contains
 44 four theme parks, including the newly-built Animal Kingdom,
 45 three more water parks, a nature reserve, a sports complex, five
 46 golf courses and a large shopping complex. Though Disney is huge
 47 by any standards, visiting it is neither tiring and nor
 48 difficult if you hire a car. You can normally have hire an
 49 air-conditioned car through the travel agency, which will save
 50 time. The park may be enormous, but queues at the
 51 Easter and other holiday periods can still be very long. This
 52 means you will only be then able to sample about
 53 half of that what is available if you spend a week
 54 there. Disney seems to consist out of a wonderful mix of
 55 everything for the whole family so it may turn surely
 out to be the holiday of a lifetime.

E For questions 56–65, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

The sound of music

There is a new sound to be heard on the (0) *grassy* slopes of
 (56) Europe. Early in the morning inhabitants of the
 sparsely (57) agricultural regions of Austria and
 Southern Germany wake up to (58) melodies being
 played to cows. The farmers who use both live and (59)
 music to calm the cattle emphasise the (60) of keeping
 these sensitive animals free from stress. They claim that the music
 (61) up the animals' day by allowing them
 to relax. This (62) increases milk
 (63) and helps the cows give milk much more easily.
 To their (64) , farmers have also found that the quality
 of milk is better.

Now they are experimenting to see how (65) music is
 in getting other farm animals to become more productive.

GRASS
CENTRE
POPULATION
ROMANCE
RECORD
IMPORTANT

BRIGHT
SIGNIFICANT
PRODUCE
ASTONISH

VALUE

IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle	Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
beat	beat	beaten	lose	lost	lost
become	became	become	make	made	made
begin	began	begun	mean	meant	meant
bite	bit	bitten	meet	met	met
bleed	bled	bled	mistake	mistook	mistaken
blow	blew	blown	pay	paid	paid
break	broke	broken	put	put	put
bring	brought	brought	read	read	read
build	built	built	ride	rode	ridden
burn	burnt	burnt	ring	rang	rung
buy	bought	bought	run	ran	run
catch	caught	caught	say	said	said
choose	chose	chosen	see	saw	seen
come	came	come	sell	sold	sold
cost	cost	cost	send	sent	sent
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
dig	dug	dug	shine	shone	shone
do	did	done	shoot	shot	shot
draw	drew	drawn	show	showed	shown
drink	drank	drunk	shut	shut	shut
drive	drove	driven	sing	sang	sung
eat	ate	eaten	sink	sank	sunk
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feed	fed	fed	sleep	slept	slept
feel	felt	felt	smell	smelt	smelt
find	found	found	speak	spoke	spoken
fly	flew	flown	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	spring	sprang	sprung
get	got	got	stand	stood	stood
give	gave	given	steal	stole	stolen
go	went	gone	stick	stuck	stuck
grow	grew	grown	strike	struck	struck
have	had	had	swim	swam	swum
hear	heard	heard	take	took	taken
hide	hid	hidden	teach	taught	taught
hit	hit	hit	tear	tore	torn
hold	held	held	tell	told	told
keep	kept	kept	think	thought	thought
know	knew	known	throw	threw	thrown
lead	led	led	understand	understood	understood
learn	learnt	learnt	wake	woke	woken
leave	left	left	wear	wore	worn
lend	lent	lent	win	won	won
let	let	let	write	wrote	written

First published by New Editions 2002

Reprinted April 2006

New Editions	New Editions
37 Bagley Wood Road	3 Theta Street
Kennington	167 77 Hellinikon
Oxford OX1 5LY	Athens
England	Greece

Tel: (+30) 210 9883156

Fax: (+30) 210 9880223

E-mail: enquiries@new-editions.com

Web site: www.new-editions.com

Text, design and illustrations © New Editions 2002

ISBN 960-403-076-0 Student's Book

ISBN 960-403-077-9 Teacher's Book

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers. Any person who carries out any unauthorised act in relation to this publication may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damages.

Every effort has been made to trace copyright holders. If any have been inadvertently overlooked, the publishers will be pleased to make the necessary acknowledgements at the first opportunity.

The Vocabulary Practice units and Examination Practice units in this book also appear in another title by New Editions, Top Marks Use of English and Reading, written by Nicholas Stephens.

